

# Administering Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series

Release 4.2.1 NN47227-600 Issue 06.03 October 2015

#### Notice

While reasonable efforts have been made to ensure that the information in this document is complete and accurate at the time of printing, Avaya assumes no liability for any errors. Avaya reserves the right to make changes and corrections to the information in this document without the obligation to notify any person or organization of such changes.

#### **Documentation disclaimer**

"Documentation" means information published by Avaya in varying mediums which may include product information, operating instructions and performance specifications that Avaya may generally make available to users of its products and Hosted Services. Documentation does not include marketing materials. Avaya shall not be responsible for any modifications, additions, or deletions to the original published version of documentation unless such modifications, additions, or deletions were performed by Avaya. End User agrees to indemnify and hold harmless Avaya, Avaya's agents, servants and employees against all claims, lawsuits, demands and judgments arising out of, or in connection with, subsequent modifications, additions or deletions to this documentation, to the extent made by End User.

#### Link disclaimer

Avaya is not responsible for the contents or reliability of any linked websites referenced within this site or documentation provided by Avaya. Avaya is not responsible for the accuracy of any information, statement or content provided on these sites and does not necessarily endorse the products, services, or information described or offered within them. Avaya does not guarantee that these links will work all the time and has no control over the availability of the linked pages.

#### Warranty

Avaya provides a limited warranty on Avaya hardware and software. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language, as well as information regarding support for this product while under warranty is available to Avaya customers and other parties through the Avaya Support website: <u>http://support.avaya.com</u> or such successor site as designated by Avaya. Please note that if You acquired the product(s) from an authorized Avaya Channel Partner outside of the United States and Canada, the warranty is provided to You by said Avaya Channel Partner and not by Avaya.

#### Licenses

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE TERMS AVAILABLE ON THE AVAYA WEBSITE. HTTP://SUPPORT.AVAYA.COM/LICENSEINFO OR SUCH SUCCESSOR SITE AS DESIGNATED BY AVAYA, ARE APPLICABLE TO ANYONE WHO DOWNLOADS, USES AND/OR INSTALLS AVAYA SOFTWARE, PURCHASED FROM AVAYA INC. ANY AVAYA AFFILIATE, OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER (AS APPLICABLE) UNDER A COMMERCIAL AGREEMENT WITH AVAYA OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER. UNLESS OTHERWISE AGREED TO BY AVAYA IN WRITING, AVAYA DOES NOT EXTEND THIS LICENSE IF THE SOFTWARE WAS OBTAINED FROM ANYONE OTHER THAN AVAYA, AN AVAYA AFFILIATE OR AN AVAYA CHANNEL PARTNER; AVAYA RESERVES THE RIGHT TO TAKE LEGAL ACTION AGAINST YOU AND ANYONE ELSE USING OR SELLING THE SOFTWARE WITHOUT A LICENSE. BY INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING OR USING THE SOFTWARE, OR AUTHORIZING OTHERS TO DO SO, YOU, ON BEHALF OF YOURSELF AND THE ENTITY FOR WHOM YOU ARE INSTALLING, DOWNLOADING OR USING THE SOFTWARE (HEREINAFTER REFERRED TO INTERCHANGEABLY AS "YOU" AND "END USER"), AGREE TO THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS AND CREATE A BINDING CONTRACT BETWEEN YOU AND AVAYA INC. OR THE APPLICABLE AVAYA AFFILIATE ("AVAYA").

Avaya grants You a license within the scope of the license types described below, with the exception of Heritage Nortel Software, for which the scope of the license is detailed below. Where the order documentation does not expressly identify a license type, the applicable license will be a Designated System License. The

applicable number of licenses and units of capacity for which the license is granted will be one (1), unless a different number of licenses or units of capacity is specified in the documentation or other materials available to You. "Software" means computer programs in object code, provided by Avaya or an Avaya Channel Partner, whether as stand-alone products, pre-installed on hardware products, and any upgrades, updates, patches, bug fixes, or modified versions thereto. "Designated Processor" means a single stand-alone computing device. "Server" means a Designated Processor that hosts a software application to be accessed by multiple users. "Instance" means a single copy of the Software executing at a particular time: (i) on one physical machine; or (ii) on one deployed software virtual machine ("VM") or similar deployment.

#### Licence types

Designated System(s) License (DS). End User may install and use each copy or an Instance of the Software only on a number of Designated Processors up to the number indicated in the order. Avaya may require the Designated Processor(s) to be identified in the order by type, serial number, feature key, Instance, location or other specific designation, or to be provided by End User to Avaya through electronic means established by Avaya specifically for this purpose.

#### Heritage Nortel Software

"Heritage Nortel Software" means the software that was acquired by Avaya as part of its purchase of the Nortel Enterprise Solutions Business in December 2009. The Heritage Nortel Software currently available for license from Avaya is the software contained within the list of Heritage Nortel Products located at http://support.avaya.com/ <u>LicenseInfo</u> under the link "Heritage Nortel Products" or such successor site as designated by Avaya. For Heritage Nortel Software, Avaya grants You a license to use Heritage Nortel Software provided hereunder solely to the extent of the authorized activation or authorized usage level, solely for the purpose specified in the Documentation, and solely as embedded in, for execution on, or for communication with Avaya equipment. Charges for Heritage Nortel Software may be based on extent of activation or use authorized as specified in an order or invoice.

#### Copyright

Except where expressly stated otherwise, no use should be made of materials on this site, the Documentation, Software, Hosted Service, or hardware provided by Avaya. All content on this site, the documentation, Hosted Service, and the product provided by Avaya including the selection, arrangement and design of the content is owned either by Avaya or its licensors and is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws including the sui generis rights relating to the protection of databases. You may not modify, copy, reproduce, republish, upload, post, transmit or distribute in any way any content, in whole or in part, including any code and software unless expressly authorized by Avaya. Unauthorized reproduction, transmission, dissemination, storage, and or use without the express written consent of Avaya can be a criminal, as well as a civil offense under the applicable law.

#### **Third Party Components**

"Third Party Components" mean certain software programs or portions thereof included in the Software or Hosted Service may contain software (including open source software) distributed under third party agreements ("Third Party Components"), which contain terms regarding the rights to use certain portions of the Software ("Third Party Terms"). As required, information regarding distributed Linux OS source code (for those products that have distributed Linux OS source code) and identifying the copyright holders of the Third Party Components and the Third Party Terms that apply is available in the products, Documentation or on Avaya's website at: http:// support.avaya.com/Copyright or such successor site as designated by Avaya. You agree to the Third Party Terms for any such Third Party Components.

#### **Preventing Toll Fraud**

"Toll Fraud" is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party (for example, a person who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf). Be aware that there can be a risk of Toll Fraud associated with your system and that, if Toll Fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

#### Avaya Toll Fraud intervention

If You suspect that You are being victimized by Toll Fraud and You need technical assistance or support, call Technical Service Center Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at +1-800-643-2353 for the United States and Canada. For additional support telephone numbers, see the Avaya Support website: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a> or such successor site as designated by Avaya. Suspected security vulnerabilities with Avaya products should be reported to Avaya by sending mail to: securityalerts@avaya.com.

#### **Downloading Documentation**

For the most current versions of Documentation, see the Avaya Support website: <u>http://support.avaya.com</u>, or such successor site as designated by Avaya.

#### **Contact Avaya Support**

See the Avaya Support website: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a> for product or Hosted Service notices and articles, or to report a problem with your Avaya product or Hosted Service. For a list of support telephone numbers and contact addresses, go to the Avaya Support website: <a href="http://support.avaya.com">http://support.avaya.com</a> (or such successor site as designated by Avaya), scroll to the bottom of the page, and select Contact Avaya Support.

#### Trademarks

The trademarks, logos and service marks ("Marks") displayed in this site, the Documentation, Hosted Service(s), and product(s) provided by Avaya are the registered or unregistered Marks of Avaya, its affiliates, or other third parties. Users are not permitted to use such Marks without prior written consent from Avaya or such third party which may own the Mark. Nothing contained in this site, the Documentation, Hosted Service(s) and product(s) should be construed as granting, by implication, estoppel, or otherwise, any license or right in and to the Marks without the express written permission of Avaya or the applicable third party.

Avaya is a registered trademark of Avaya Inc.

All non-Avaya trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Linux $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$  is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

## Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction	9
Purpose	9
Related resources	9
Training	9
Subscribing to e-notifications	. 10
Support	12
Searching a documentation collection	12
Chapter 2: New in this release	. 14
VOSS 4.2.1	
Features	. 14
VOSS 4.2	
Features	. 15
Other changes	
Chapter 3: Basic administration	
Basic administration procedures using ACLI	
Saving the configuration	
Restarting the platform	
Resetting the platform	
Shutting down the system	
Pinging an IP device	
Calculating the MD5 digest	. 24
Resetting system functions	. 26
Sourcing a configuration	26
Basic administration procedures using EDM	. 27
Resetting the platform	. 27
Showing the MTU for the system	28
Displaying storage use	. 28
Displaying available storage space	29
Displaying internal flash file information	. 29
Displaying internal flash files	30
Displaying USB file information	. 30
Copying a file	. 31
Saving the configuration	. 32
Chapter 4: System startup fundamentals	. 33
spbm-config-mode boot flag	. 33
Boot sequence	
System flags	36
System connections	37
Client and server support	38

Chapter 5: Boot parameter configuration using ACLI	. 40
Modifying the boot sequence	. 40
Configuring the remote host logon	41
Enabling remote access services	. 41
Changing the primary or secondary boot configuration files	46
Configuring boot flags using ACLI	. 47
Configuring serial port devices	. 52
Displaying the boot configuration	53
Chapter 6: Run-time process management using ACLI	. 55
Configuring the date	55
Configuring the time zone	56
Configuring the run-time environment	57
Configuring the logon banner	60
Configuring the message-of-the-day	61
Configuring ACLI logging	62
Configuring system parameters	63
Configuring system message control	. 64
Extending system message control	. 65
Chapter 7: Chassis operations	. 67
Chassis operations fundamentals	67
Management port	67
Software lock-up detection	68
Jumbo frames	69
SynOptics Network Management Protocol	. 69
Channelization	70
Chassis operations configuration using ACLI	
Enabling jumbo frames	
Configuring port lock	
Configuring SONMP	
Viewing the topology message status	
Associating a port to a VRF instance	
Configuring an IP address for the management port	
Configuring Ethernet ports with Autonegotiation	
Enabling channelization	
Configuring serial management port dropping	
Controlling slot power	
Chassis operations configuration using EDM	
Editing system information	
Editing chassis information	
Configuring system flags	
Configuring channelization	
Configuring basic port parameters	
Viewing the boot configuration	. 91

Configuring boot flags		93
Enabling Jumbo frames		94
Configuring the date and time		95
Associating a port to a VRF instance		
Configuring CP Limit		96
Configuring an IP address for the management port		96
Editing the management port parameters		
Configuring the management port IPv6 interface parameters		
Configuring management port IPv6 addresses		
Auto reactivating the port of the SLPP shutdown		
Editing serial port parameters	1	03
Enabling port lock	1	03
Locking a port	1	04
Viewing power information	1	04
Viewing power status on VSP 8400	1	05
Viewing fan information	1	06
Viewing topology status information	1	06
Viewing the topology message status	1	07
Configuring a forced message control pattern	1	80
Chapter 8: Hardware status using EDM	1	09
Configuring polling intervals	1	09
Viewing module information	1	10
Viewing power supply parameters	1	10
Viewing temperature on the chassis	1	11
Chapter 9: Domain Name Service	1	13
DNS fundamentals	1	13
DNS configuration using ACLI	1	14
Configuring the DNS client	1	14
Querying the DNS host	1	15
DNS configuration using EDM	1	16
Configuring the DNS client		
Querying the DNS host	1	17
Chapter 10: Licensing	1	19
Licensing fundamentals	1	19
Feature licensing		
License type and part numbers	1	21
Feature license files	1	22
License installation using ACLI	1	22
Installing a license file	1	22
Showing a license file	1	24
License installation using EDM	1	25
Installing a license file	1	25
Chapter 11: Network Time Protocol	1	27

NTP fundamentals	1	27
Overview	1	27
NTP system implementation model	1	28
Time distribution within a subnet	1	29
Synchronization	1	29
NTP modes of operation	1	29
NTP authentication	1	30
NTP configuration using ACLI	1	31
Enabling NTP globally	1	32
Adding an NTP server	1	33
Configuring authentication keys	1	34
NTP configuration using EDM	1	35
Enabling NTP globally	1	37
Adding an NTP server	1	37
Configuring authentication keys	1	38
Chapter 12: Secure Shell	1	40
Secure Shell fundamentals	1	40
Secure Shell configuration using ACLI	1	50
Downloading the software		
Enabling the SSHv2 server	1	51
Setting SSH configuration parameters	1	52
Verifying and displaying SSH configuration information	1	55
Connecting to a remote host using the SSH client	1	56
Generating user key files	1	56
Managing an SSL certificate	1	58
Disabling SFTP without disabling SSH	1	59
Secure Shell configuration using Enterprise Device Manager	1	59
Downloading the software	1	59
Changing Secure Shell parameters	1	60
Chapter 13: System access	1	63
System access fundamentals	1	63
Logging on to the system	1	63
Managing the system using different VRF contexts	1	65
ACLI passwords	1	66
Access policies for services	1	66
Web interface passwords		
Enhanced secure mode authentication access levels	1	67
Password requirements	1	69
System access configuration using ACLI	1	71
Enabling ACLI access levels		
Changing passwords		
Configuring an access policy		
Specifying a name for an access policy	1	78

Allowing a network access to the switch	179
Configuring access policies by MAC address	
System access security enhancements using ACLI	
System access configuration using EDM	194
Enabling access levels	
Changing passwords	
Creating an access policy	196
Enabling an access policy	
System access security enhancements using EDM	
Chapter 14: ACLI show command reference.	
Access, logon names, and passwords	
Basic switch configuration	
Current switch configuration	
CLI settings	
Ftp-access sessions	
Hardware information	
NTP server statistics	
Power summary	
Power information for power supplies	
System information.	
System status (detailed)	
Telnet-access sessions.	
Users logged on	212
Port egress COS queue statistics	
CPU queue statistics	
Chapter 15: Port numbering and MAC address assignment reference	
Port numbering	
Interface indexes	
MAC address assignment	
Chapter 16: Supported standards, RFCs, and MIBs	
Supported IEEE standards	
Supported RFCs	
Quality of service	
Network management	
MIBs	
Standard MIBs	
Proprietary MIBs	
Glossary	
01033al y	

# **Chapter 1: Introduction**

# **Purpose**

This document provides information on features in VSP Operating System Software (VOSS). VOSS runs on the following product families:

- Avaya Virtual Services Platform 4000 Series
- · Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series
- · Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8000 Series

This administration guide provides conceptual information and procedures that you can use to administer system-level topics such as Domain Name Server, network clock synchronization, and Network Time Protocol. It also describes tasks related to the administration of the network including configuration and management of systems, data, and users.

This document includes both initial and ongoing administrative tasks for the Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series switches. For information on administrating the Avaya Virtual Services Platform 4000 Series, see *Administration for Avaya Virtual Services Platform 4000 Series*, NN46251-600.

Examples and network illustrations in this document may illustrate only one of the supported platforms. Unless otherwise noted, the concept illustrated applies to all supported platforms.

# **Related resources**

## **Documentation**

See the *Documentation Reference for Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-100 for a list of the documentation for this product.

# Training

Ongoing product training is available. For more information or to register, you can access the Web site at <u>http://avaya-learning.com/</u>.

# **Viewing Avaya Mentor videos**

Avaya Mentor videos provide technical content on how to install, configure, and troubleshoot Avaya products.

#### About this task

Videos are available on the Avaya Support website, listed under the video document type, and on the Avaya-run channel on YouTube.

#### Procedure

- To find videos on the Avaya Support website, go to <u>http://support.avaya.com</u> and perform one of the following actions:
  - In Search, type Avaya Mentor Videos to see a list of the available videos.
  - In **Search**, type the product name. On the Search Results page, select **Video** in the **Content Type** column on the left.
- To find the Avaya Mentor videos on YouTube, go to <u>www.youtube.com/AvayaMentor</u> and perform one of the following actions:
  - Enter a key word or key words in the **Search Channel** to search for a specific product or topic.
  - Scroll down Playlists, and click the name of a topic to see the available list of videos posted on the website.

😵 Note:

Videos are not available for all products.

# Subscribing to e-notifications

Subscribe to e-notifications to receive an email notification when documents are added to or changed on the Avaya Support website.

#### About this task

You can subscribe to different types of general notifications, for example, Product Correction Notices (PCN), which apply to any product or a specific product. You can also subscribe to specific types of documentation for a specific product, for example, Application & Technical Notes for Ethernet Routing Switch 8800.

#### Procedure

- 1. In an Internet browser, go to https://support.avaya.com.
- 2. Type your username and password, and then click Login.
- 3. Under My Information, select SSO login Profile.
- 4. Click E-NOTIFICATIONS.

5. In the GENERAL NOTIFICATIONS area, select the required documentation types, and then click **UPDATE**.

GENERAL NOTIFICATIONS 1/5 Notifications Selected	
End of Sale and/or Manufacturer Support Notices	
Product Correction Notices (PCN)	
Product Support Notices	
Security Advisories	
Services Support Notices	
UP	DATE »

- 6. Click **OK**.
- 7. In the PRODUCT NOTIFICATIONS area, click Add More Products.



- 8. Scroll through the list, and then select the product name.
- 9. Select a release version.
- 10. Select the check box next to the required documentation types.

#### Introduction

PRODUCTS	My Notifications		
Virtual Services Platform 7000	-	VIRTUAL SERVICES PLATFORM 7000 Select a Release Version	
Virtualization Provisioning Service		All and Future	
Visual Messenger™ for OCTEL® 250/350		Administration and System Programming	
Visual Vectors		Application Developer Information	
Visualization Performance and Fault Manager		Application Notes	
Voice Portal		Application and Technical Notes	<b>~</b>
Voice over IP Monitoring		Declarations of Conformity	
W310 Wireless LAN Gateway		Documentation Library	<ul> <li>Image: A second s</li></ul>
WLAN 2200 Series			SUBMIT >>
WLAN Handset 2200 Series			

11. Click Submit.

# Support

Go to the Avaya Support website at <u>http://support.avaya.com</u> for the most up-to-date documentation, product notices, and knowledge articles. You can also search for release notes, downloads, and resolutions to issues. Use the online service request system to create a service request. Chat with live agents to get answers to questions, or request an agent to connect you to a support team if an issue requires additional expertise.

# Searching a documentation collection

On the Avaya Support website, you can download the documentation library for a specific product and software release to perform searches across an entire document collection. For example, you can perform a single, simultaneous search across the collection to quickly find all occurrences of a particular feature. Use this procedure to perform an index search of your documentation collection.

#### Before you begin

- Download the documentation collection zip file to your local computer.
- You must have Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader installed on your computer.

#### Procedure

- 1. Extract the document collection zip file into a folder.
- 2. Navigate to the folder that contains the extracted files and open the file named cproduct\_name\_release>.pdx.

- 3. In the Search dialog box, select the option **In the index named** cproduct\_name\_release>.pdx.
- 4. Enter a search word or phrase.
- 5. Select any of the following to narrow your search:
  - Whole Words Only
  - Case-Sensitive
  - Include Bookmarks
  - Include Comments
- 6. Click Search.

The search results show the number of documents and instances found. You can sort the search results by Relevance Ranking, Date Modified, Filename, or Location. The default is Relevance Ranking.

# **Chapter 2: New in this release**

The following sections detail what is new in *Administering Avaya Virtual Services Platform* 7200 *Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-600.

# VOSS 4.2.1

## Features

See the following sections for information about feature changes.

## Autonegotiation updates

<u>Configuring Ethernet ports with Autonegotiation</u> on page 77 and <u>Configuring basic port</u> <u>parameters</u> on page 87 are updated to include VSP 7200 Series.

#### **Channelization updates**

Channelization on page 70 is updated to include VSP 7200 Series.

#### Chassis temperature updates

Viewing temperature on the chassis on page 111 is updated to include VSP 7200 Series.

#### EDM support for enhanced secure mode

VOSS 4.2.1 introduces EDM support to enable or disable enhanced secure mode. For more information, see <u>System access security enhancements using EDM</u> on page 200.

#### Licensing

VOSS 4.2.1 updates the out put of the **show license** command. For more information, see <u>Showing a license file</u> on page 124.

#### Request for comment (RFC) updates

VOSS 4.2.1 updates the RFC information to add support for the following:

- RFC 2284
- RFC 2716
- RFC 2865
- RFC 3748

For more information, see <u>Supported RFCs</u> on page 221.

## Secure Shell (SSHv2)

VOSS 4.2.1 introduces the command enable ssh sftp, which allows you to disable SFTP while SSH remains active. For more information, see <u>Disabling SFTP without disabling SSH</u> on page 159.

# **VOSS 4.2**

## Features

See the following sections for information about feature changes.

## Channelization

Channelization allows you to configure 40Gbps QSFP+ ports to operate as four 10 Gigabit Ethernet ports.

For more information, see:

- Channelization on page 70.
- Enabling channelization on page 79.
- Configuring channelization on page 86.

#### **Encryption module changes**

VOSS 4.2 release includes the encryption modules in the image file. Therefore, the commands **load-encryption-module** and **software** add-modules have been removed. The commands are no longer required for the current release to load the encryption modules. However, if you downgrade the switch from the VOSS 4.2 version, you continue to require these commands. For more information, see the procedure for downgrading the software in *Release Notes for VSP Operating System Software*, NN47227-401.

#### Enhanced secure mode

VOSS 4.2 release adds support for the new boot config flags enhancedsecure-mode command. If you enable enhanced secure mode, the system can provide role-based access levels, strong password requirements, and strong rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.

For more information see

- Enhanced secure mode authentication access levels on page 167.
- Password requirements on page 169.
- System access security enhancements using ACLI on page 180.
- Logging on to the system on page 163.
- Access, logon names, and passwords on page 202.

• Variable definitions on page 42.

## Request for comment (RFC) updates

VOSS 4.2 release updates the RFC information to add support for the following RFCs:

- RFC 2407
- RFC 2408
- RFC 4301
- RFC 4302
- RFC 4303
- RFC 4305
- RFC 4308
- RFC 4552
- RFC 4835

For more information, see <u>Supported RFCs</u> on page 221.

## Secure Copy (SCP) changes

The current release does not support Secure Copy (SCP). This release supports Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) to transfer files securely. For more information, see:

- <u>Client and server support</u> on page 38.
- Secure Shell fundamentals on page 140.

#### Secure Shell (SSHv2)

VOSS 4.2 release updates Secure Shell implementation on the switch. The switch now only supports Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2).

SSHv2 also adds encryption support for MD5, SHA-1, and SHA-2.

VOSS 4.2 release updates RSA and DSA key size ranges.

For more information, see:

- Client and server support on page 38.
- Enabling remote access services on page 41.
- Secure Shell fundamentals on page 140.
- Secure Shell configuration using ACLI on page 150.
- Secure Shell configuration using Enterprise Device Manager on page 159.

#### Serial console port behavior

VOSS 4.2 release adds the ability to configure the serial management ports to drop a connection that is interrupted for any reason. If you enable serial port dropping, the serial management ports drop the connection for the following reasons:

- modem power failure
- link disconnection
- · loss of the carrier

Serial ports interrupted due to link disconnection, power failure, or other reasons force out the user and end the user session. Ending the user session ensures a maintenance port is not available with an active session that can allow unauthorized use by someone other than the authenticated user, and prevents the physical hijacking of an active session by unplugging the connected cable and plugging in another.

For more information, see Configuring serial management port dropping on page 80.

## sys power slot cli command

VOSS 4.2 release adds the **sys power slot** command. For more information, see <u>Controlling slot</u> power on page 81.

# **Other changes**

The chapter <u>Supported standards RFCs and MIBs</u> on page 220 was added to this document in this release.

# **Chapter 3: Basic administration**

The following sections describe common procedures to configure and monitor the switch.

# **Basic administration procedures using ACLI**

The following section describes common procedures that you use while you configure and monitor the switch operations.

## 😵 Note:

Unless otherwise stated, to perform the procedures in this section, you must log on to the Privileged EXEC mode in Avaya Command Line Interface (ACLI). For more information about how to use ACLI, see *Using ACLI and EDM on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-103.

# Saving the configuration

Save the configuration

- When you make a change to the configuration.
- To create a backup configuration file before you upgrade the software on the switch.

After you change the configuration, you must save the changes on the device. Save the configuration to a file to retain the configuration settings.

## About this task

File Transfer Protocol (FTP) and Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) support IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

## Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. Save the running configuration:

```
save config [backup WORD<1-99>] [file WORD<1-99>] [verbose]
```

## Example

Switch:1> enable

Save the configuration to the default location:

Switch:1# save config

Identify the file as a backup file and designate a location to save the file:

```
Switch:1# save config <filename>
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **save** config command.

Variable	Value
backup WORD<1-99>	Saves the specified file name and identifies the file as a backup file.
	WORD<1–99> uses one of the following format:
	• a.b.c.d: <file></file>
	<ul> <li>/intflash/<file></file></li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>/usb/<file></file></li> </ul>
	The file name, including the directory structure, can include up to 99 characters.
file WORD<1–99>	Specifies the file name in one of the following format:
	• a.b.c.d: <file></file>
	<ul> <li>/intflash/<file></file></li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>/usb/<file></file></li> </ul>
	The file name, including the directory structure, can include up to 99 characters.
verbose	Saves the default and current configuration. If you omit this parameter, the command saves only parameters you change.

# **Restarting the platform**

## Before you begin

#### • 😒 Note:

The command mode is key for this command. If you are logged on to a different command mode, such as Global Configuration mode, rather than Privileged EXEC mode, different options appear for this command.

## About this task

Restart the switch to implement configuration changes or recover from a system failure. When you restart the system, you can specify the boot config file name. If you do not specify a boot source and file, the boot command uses the configuration files on the primary boot device defined by the boot config choice command.

After the switch restarts normally, it sends a cold trap within 45 seconds after the restart.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. Restart the switch:

```
boot [config WORD<1-99>] [-y]
```



If you enter the boot command with no arguments, you cause the switch to start using the current boot choices defined by the boot config choice command.

If you enter a boot command and the configuration file name without the directory, the device uses the configuration file from /intflash/.

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

#### Restart the switch:

```
Switch:1# boot config /intflash/config.cfg
Switch:1# Do you want to continue? (y/n)
Switch:1# Do you want to continue? (y/n) y
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the boot command.

#### Table 1: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
config WORD<1–99>	Specifies the software configuration device and file name in one of the following formats:
	<ul> <li>/intflash/ <file></file></li> </ul>
	The file name, including the directory structure, can include up to 99 characters.
-у	Suppresses the confirmation message before the switch restarts. If you omit this parameter, you must confirm the action before the system restarts.

# **Resetting the platform**

## About this task

Reset the platform to reload system parameters from the most recently saved configuration file.

## Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. Reset the switch:

reset [-y]

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

#### Reset the switch:

Switch:1# reset

Are you sure you want to reset the switch? (y/n) y

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the reset command.

#### **Table 2: Variable definitions**

Variable	Value
-y	Suppresses the confirmation message before the switch resets. If you omit this parameter, you must confirm the action before the system resets.

# Shutting down the system

Use the following procedure to shut down the system.

#### Caution:

Before you unplug the AC power cord, always perform the following shutdown procedure. This procedure flushes any pending data to ensure data integrity.

## Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. Shut down the system:

sys shutdown

3. Before you unplug the power cord, wait until you see the following message:

System Halted, OK to turn off power

#### Example

Shut down a running system.

```
Switch:1#sys shutdown
Are you sure you want shutdown the system? Y/N (y/n) ? y
    [05/08/14 15:47:50.164] 0x00010813 00000000 GlobalRouter HW INFO System shutdown
CP1
initiated from CLI
CP1 [05/08/14 15:47:52.000] LifeCycle: INFO: Stopping all processes
CP1 [05/08/14 15:47:53.000] LifeCycle: INFO: All processes have stopped
CP1 [05/08/14 15:47:53.000] LifeCycle: INFO: All applications shutdown, starting power
down sequence
INIT: Sending processes the TERM signal
Stopping OpenBSD Secure Shell server: sshdno /usr/sbin/sshd found; none killed
Stopping vsp...Error, do this: mount -t proc none /proc
done
sed: /proc/mounts: No such file or directory
sed: /proc/mounts: No such file or directory
sed: /proc/mounts: No such file or directory
Deconfiguring network interfaces... done.
Stopping syslogd/klogd: no syslogd found; none killed
Sending all processes the TERM signal...
Sending all processes the KILL signal...
/etc/rc0.d/S25save-rtc.sh: line 5: /etc/timestamp: Read-only file system
Unmounting remote filesystems...
Stopping portmap daemon: portmap.
Deactivating swap...
Unmounting local filesystems...
[24481.722669] Power down.
[24481.751868] System Halted, OK to turn off power
```

# **Pinging an IP device**

#### About this task

Ping a device to test the connection between the switch and another network device. After you ping a device, the switch sends an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) packet to the target device. If the device receives the packet, it sends a ping reply. After the switch receives the reply, a message appears that indicates traffic can reach the specified IP address. If the switch does not receive a reply, the message indicates the address does not respond.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log on to the switch to enter User EXEC mode.
- 2. Ping an IP network connection:

```
ping WORD<0-256> [-d] [-I <1-60>] [-s] [-t <1-120>] [count <1-9999>]
[datasize <28-51200>] [interface <gigabitEthernet|mgmtEthenet|
tunnel|vlan>] [scopeid <1-9999>] [source WORD<1-256>] [vrf WORD<0-
16>]
```

## Example

Ping an IP device from a GRT VLAN IP interface:

Switch:1# ping 192.0.2.16

192.0.2.16 is alive

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ping command.

Variable	Value
count <1-9999>	Specifies the number of times to ping (1–9999).
-d	Configures the ping debug mode. This variable detects local software failures (ping related threads creation or write to sending socket) and receiving issues (ICMP packet too short or wrong ICMP packet type).
datasize {28-9216 28-51200}	Specifies the size of ping data sent in bytes.
	The datasize for IPv4 addresses is <28-9216>.
	The datasize for IPv6 addresses is <28-51200>.
	The default is 0.
interface <gigabitethernet mgmtethenet="" tunnel=""  =""  <br="">vlan&gt;</gigabitethernet>	Configures a specific outgoing interface to use by IP address.
	Additional ping interface filters:
	<ul> <li>gigabitEthernet: {slot/port[/sub-port]} gigabit ethernet port</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>mgmtEthenet: {slot/port[/sub-port]} mgmt ethernet port</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>tunnel: tunnel ID as a value from 1–2000</li> </ul>
	• vlan:
	Specifies the VLAN ID in the range of 1 to 4059. VLAN IDs 1 to 4059 are configurable. The system reserves VLAN IDs 4060 to 4094 for internal use. VLAN ID 1 is the default VLAN and you cannot create or delete VLAN ID 1.
-I <1–60>	Specifies the interval between transmissions in seconds (1–60).
scopeid <1-9999>	Specifies the scope ID.
	<1–9999> specifies the circuit ID for IPv6.
-S	Configures the continuous ping at the interval rate defined by the [-I] parameter.

Table continues...

Variable	Value
source WORD <1-256>	Specifies an IP address to be used as the source IP address in the packet header.
-t <1–120>	Specifies the no-answer timeout value in seconds (1–120).
vrf WORD<0–16>	Specifies the virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) name from 1–16 characters.
WORD<0-256>	Specifies the host name or IPv4 (a.b.c.d) address (string length 0–256). Specifies the address to ping.

# Calculating the MD5 digest

## Before you begin

• Use the md5 command with reserved files (for example, a password file) only if you possess sufficient permissions to access these files.

## About this task

Calculate the MD5 digest to verify the MD5 checksum. The md5 command calculates the MD5 digest for files on the internal flash and either shows the output on screen or stores the output in a file that you specify. An md5 command option compares the calculated MD5 digest with that in a checksum file on flash, and the compared output appears on the screen. By verifying the MD5 checksum, you can verify that the file transferred properly to the switch.

## Important:

If the MD5 key file parameters change, you must remove the old file and create a new file.

## Procedure

- 1. Log on to the switch to enter User EXEC mode.
- 2. Calculate the MD5 digest:

md5 WORD<1-99> [-a] [-c] [-f WORD<1-99>] [-r]

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

Add the data to the output file instead of overwriting it:

Switch:1# md5 password -a -f password.md5

# Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the  ${\tt md5}$  command.

Variable	Value
-а	Adds data to the output file instead of overwriting it.
	You cannot use the -a option with the -c option.
-C	Compares the checksum of the specified file by WORD<1-99> with the MD5 checksum present in the checksum file name. You can specify the checksum file name using the -f option. If the checksum filename is not specified, the file / intflash/checksum.md5 is used for comparison.
	If the supplied checksum filename and the default file are not available on flash, the following error message appears:
	Error: Checksum file <i><filename< i=""> &gt; not present.</filename<></i>
	The -c option also
	<ul> <li>calculates the checksum of files specified by WORD&lt;1–99&gt;</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>compares the checksum with all keys in the checksum file, even if filenames do not match</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>displays the output of comparison</li> </ul>
-f WORD<1–99>	Stores the result of MD5 checksum to a file on internal flash.
	If the output file specified with the -f option is reserved filenames on the switch, the command fails with the error message:
	Error: Invalid operation.
	If the output file specified with the -f option is files for which to compute MD5 checksum, the command fails with the error message:
	<pre>VSP-8284XSQ:1# md5 *.cfg -f config.cfg Error: Invalid operation on file <filename></filename></pre>
	If the checksum filename specified by the -f option exists on the switch (and is not one of the reserved filenames), the following message appears on the switch:
	File exists. Do you wish to overwrite? (y/n)
-r	Reverses the output. Use with the -f option to store the output to a file.
	You cannot use the -r option with the -c option.

## Table 3: Variable definitions

# **Resetting system functions**

## About this task

Reset system functions to reset all statistics counters, the console port (10101).

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. Reset system functions:

sys action reset {console|counters}

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

Reset the statistics counters:

Switch:1> sys action reset counters

Are you sure you want to reset system counters (y/n)?  ${\tt y}$ 

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the sys action command.

#### Table 4: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
reset {console counters}	Reinitializes the hardware universal asynchronous receiver transmitter (UART) drivers. Use this command only if the console connection does not respond. Resets all the statistics counters in the switch to zero. Resets the console port.

# Sourcing a configuration

#### About this task

The **source** cli command is intended for use with a switch that is running with a factory default configuration to quick load a pre-existing configuration from a file. If you source a configuration file to merge that configuration into a running configuration, it can result in operational configuration loss if the sourced configuration file contains any configuration that has dependencies on or conflicts with the running configuration.

## Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

#### 2. Source a configuration:

```
source WORD<1-99> [debug] [stop] [syntax]
```

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Debug the script output:

```
Switch:1# source testing.cfg debug
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the source command.

#### Table 5: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
debug	Debugs the script output.
stop	Stops the merge after an error occurs.
syntax	Verifies the script syntax.
WORD<1-99>	Specifies a filename and location in one of the following format:
	• a.b.c.d: <file></file>
	<ul> <li>/intflash/<file></file></li> </ul>
	<file> is a string. The path and <file> can use 1–99 characters.</file></file>

# **Basic administration procedures using EDM**

The following section describes common procedures that you use while you configure and monitor the switch operations using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

# **Resetting the platform**

## About this task

Reset the platform to reload system parameters from the most recently saved configuration file. Use the following procedure to reset the device using EDM.

## Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders:**Configuration > Edit**.

- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **System** tab.
- 5. Locate **ActionGroup4** near the bottom of the screen.
- 6. Select softReset from ActionGroup4.
- 7. Click Apply.

# Showing the MTU for the system

## About this task

Perform this procedure to show the MTU configured for the system.

## Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click on the **Chassis** tab.
- 5. Verify the selection for the MTU size.

# **Displaying storage use**

#### About this task

Display the amount of memory used, memory available, and the number of files for internal flash memory.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click File System.
- 3. Click the Storage usage tab

## **Device Info field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Device Info** tab.

Name	Description	
IntflashBytesUsed	Specifies the number of bytes used in internal flash memory.	
IntflashBytesFree	Specifies the number of bytes available for use in internal flash memory.	
IntflashNumFiles	Specifies the number of files in internal flash memory.	

Table continues...

Name	Description	
UsbBytesUsed	Specifies the number of bytes used in USB device.	
UsbBytesFree	Specifies the number of bytes available for use in USB device.	
UsbNumFiles	Specifies the number of files in USB device.	

# Displaying available storage space

## About this task

Display information about the available space for storage devices on this system.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click Chassis.
- 3. Click the **Storage Usage** tab.

## Storage Usage field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **Storage Usage** tab.

Name	Description
IntflashBytesUsed	Specifies the number of bytes used in internal flash memory.
IntflashBytesFree	Specifies the number of bytes available for use in internal flash memory.
IntflashNumFiles	Specifies the number of files in internal flash memory.
UsbBytesUsed	Specifies the number of bytes used in USB device.
UsbBytesFree	Specifies the number of bytes available for use in USB device.
UsbNumFiles	Specifies the number of files in USB device.

# Displaying internal flash file information

## About this task

Display information about the files in internal flash memory on this device.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click File System.
- 3. Click the Flash Files tab.

## **Flash Files field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Flash Files tab.

Name	Description
Slot	Specifies the slot number of the device.
Name	Specifies the directory name of the file.
Date	Specifies the creation or modification date of the file.
Size	Specifies the size of the file.

# **Displaying internal flash files**

Display information about the files on the internal flash.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click Chassis.
- 3. Click the Flash Files tab.

## **Flash Files field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Flash Files tab.

Name	Description	
Name	Specifies the directory name of the flash file.	
Date	Specifies the creation or modification date of the flash file.	
Size	Specifies the size of the flash file.	

# **Displaying USB file information**

## About this task

Display information about the files on a USB device for all CP modules to view general file information.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click File System.
- 3. Click the USB Files tab.

## **USB** Files field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the USB Files tab.

Name	Description
Slot	Specifies the slot number of the device.
Name	Specifies the directory name of the file.
Date	Specifies the creation or modification date of the file.
Size	Specifies the size of the file.

# Copying a file

## About this task

Copy files on the internal flash.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders:**Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click File System.
- 3. Click the Copy File tab.
- 4. Edit the fields as required.
- 5. Click Apply.

## **Copy File field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Copy File tab.

Name	Description
Source	Identifies the source file to copy. You must specify the full path and filename.
Destination	Identifies the device and the file name (optional) to which to copy the source file. You must specify the full path. Trace files are not a valid destination.
Action	Starts or stops the copy process.
Result	Specifies the result of the copy process:
	• none
	inProgress
	• success
	• fail
	invalidSource
	invalidDestination
	outOfMemory
	outOfSpace
	fileNotFound

# Saving the configuration

## About this task

After you change the configuration, you must save the changes on the device. Save the configuration to a file to retain the configuration settings.

## 😵 Note:

When you logout of the EDM interface, a dialogue box automatically prompts if you want to save the configuration. If you want to save the configuration, click **OK**. If you want to close without saving the configuration, click **Cancel**. If you no longer see the prompt, clear your browser cache, restart your browser and reconnect.

## Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: Configuration > Edit.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **System** tab.
- 5. Optionally, specify a filename in **ConfigFileName**.

If you do not specify a filename, the system saves the information to the default file.

- 6. In ActionGroup1, select saveRuntimeConfig.
- 7. Click Apply.

# **Chapter 4: System startup fundamentals**

This section provides conceptual material on the boot sequence and boot processes of the switch. Review this content before you make changes to the configurable boot process options.

# spbm-config-mode boot flag

Shortest Path Bridging (SPB) and Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) cannot interoperate with each other on the switch at the same time. To ensure that SPB and PIM stay mutually exclusive, Avaya implemented a new boot flag called spbm-config-mode.

- The **spbm-config-mode** boot flag is enabled by default. This enables you to configure SPB and IS-IS, but you cannot configure PIM either globally or on an interface.
- If you disable the boot flag, save the config and reboot with the saved config. When the flag is disabled, you can configure PIM and IGMP Snooping, but you cannot configure SPB or IS-IS.

## Important:

Whenever you change the **spbm-config-mode** boot flag, you should save the configuration and reboot the switch for the change to take effect.

For more information about this boot flag and Simplified vIST, see *Configuring IP Multicast Routing Protocols on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-504.

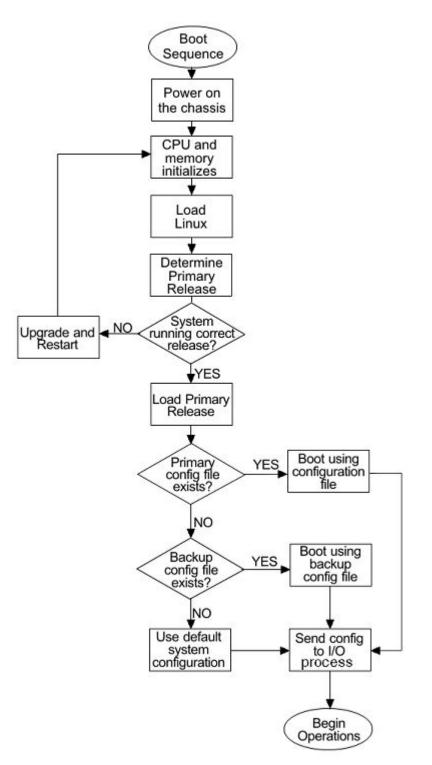
# **Boot sequence**

The switch goes through a three-stage boot sequence before it becomes fully operational. After you turn on power to the switch, the system starts.

The boot sequence consists of the following stages:

- <u>Stage 1: Loading Linux</u> on page 34
- <u>Stage 2: Loading the primary release</u> on page 35
- <u>Stage 3: Loading the configuration file</u> on page 35

The following figure shows a summary of the boot sequence.



#### Figure 1: Boot sequence

#### Stage 1: Loading Linux

The port contains a boot flash partition that stores the boot images, which include the boot loader, and the Linux kernel and applications. The boot flash partition contains two versions of the boot

image: a committed version (the primary release) and a backup version. A committed version is one that is marked as good (if you can start the system using that version). The system automatically uses the backup version if the system fails the first time you start with a new version.

## Stage 2: Loading the primary release

The switch can install a maximum of six releases but can only load one of two—a primary (committed) release or a backup release.

The system saves software image files to the /intflash/release/ directory.

After loading the primary release, the CPU and basic system devices such as the console port (10101) initialize. At this stage, the I/O ports are not available; the system does not initialize the I/O ports until the port sends configuration data in stage 3.

## Stage 3: Loading the configuration file

The final step before the boot process is complete is to load the configuration data. After the system loads the primary release, it identifies the location and file name of the primary configuration file. You can save this file in internal flash.

If the primary configuration file does not exist, the system looks for the backup configuration file, as identified by version.cfg. If this file does not exist, the system loads the factory default configuration.

The switch configuration consists of higher-level functionality, including:

- · chassis configuration
- port configuration
- virtual LAN (VLAN) configuration
- routing configuration
- IP address assignments
- remote monitoring (RMON) configuration

The default switch configuration includes the following:

- a single, port-based default VLAN with a VLAN identification number of 1
- no interface assigned IP addresses
- traffic priority for all ports configured to normal priority
- all ports as untagged ports
- default communication protocol settings for the console port (10101). For more information about these protocol settings, see <u>System connections</u> on page 37.

In the configuration file, statements preceded by both the number sign (#) and exclamation point (!) load prior to the general configuration parameters. Statements preceded by only the number sign are comments meant to add clarity to the configuration; they do not load configuration parameters. The following table illustrates the difference between these two statement formats.

#### Table 6: Configuration file statements

Sample statement	Action
# software version : 4.0.0.0	Adds clarity to the configuration by identifying the software version.
#!no boot config flags sshd	Configures the flag to the false condition, prior to loading the general configuration.

## **Boot sequence modification**

You can change the boot sequence in the following ways:

- Change the primary designations for file sources.
- Change the file names from the default values. You can store several versions of the configuration file and specify a particular one by file name. The specified configuration file only gets loaded when the chassis starts. To load a new configuration file, you need to restart the system.
- Start the system without loading a configuration file, so that the system uses the factory default configuration. Bypassing the system configuration does not affect saved system configuration; the configuration simply does not load. This can be done by setting the factory defaults boot flag.

#### **Run-time**

After the switch is operational, you can use the run-time commands to perform configuration and management functions necessary to manage the system. These functions include the following

- · resetting or restarting the switch
- · adding, deleting, and displaying address resolution protocol (ARP) table entries
- · pinging another network device
- · viewing and configuring variables for the entire system and for individual ports
- · configuring and displaying MultiLink Trunking (MLT) parameters
- · creating and managing port-based VLANs or policy-based VLANs

To access the run-time environment you need a connection from a PC or terminal to the switch. You can use a direct connection to the switch through the console port (10101) or remotely through Telnet, rlogin, or Secure Shell (SSH) sessions.

## Important:

Before you attempt to access the switch using one of the preceding methods, ensure you first enable the corresponding daemon flags.

# System flags

After you enable or disable certain modes and functions, you need to save the configuration and restart the switch for your change to take effect. This section lists parameters and indicates if they require a switch restart.

The following table lists parameters you configure in ACLI using the **boot config flags** command. For information on system flags and their configuration, see <u>Configuring system flags</u> on page 47.

ACLI flag	Restart
block-snmp	No
debug-config	Yes
debugmode	Yes
enhancedsecure-mode	Yes
factorydefaults	Yes
ftpd	No
hsecure	Yes
logging	No
reboot	No
rlogind	No
spanning-tree-mode	Yes
spbm-config-mode	Yes
sshd	No
telnetd	No
tftpd	No
trace-logging	No
verify-config	Yes

#### Table 7: Boot config flags

## System connections

Connect the serial console interface (an RJ45 jack) to a PC or terminal to monitor and configure the switch. The port uses a RJ45 connector that operates as data terminal equipment (DTE). The default communication protocol settings for the console port (10101) are:

- 9600 baud
- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- No parity

To use the console port (10101), you need a terminal or teletypewriter (TTY)-compatible terminal, or a portable computer with a serial port and terminal-emulation software.

## **Client and server support**

The client-server model partitions tasks between servers that provide a service and clients that request a service.

For active ACLI clients, users initiate a client connection from the VSP switch to another device.

For non-active clients, the client exists on the switch and the switch console initiates the request, with no intervention from users after the initial setup. For instance, Network Time Protocol (NTP) is a non active client. The switch initiates the client request to the central server to obtain the up-to-date time.

#### Clients

#### **IPv4 support:**

The switch supports the following active ACLI clients using IPv4:

- remote shell (rsh)
- rlogin
- Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2)
- telnet

The switch supports the following non active client using IPv4:

Network Time Protocol (NTP)

#### IPv4 and IPv6 support:

The switch supports the following active ACLI clients using IPv4.

- File Transfer Protocol (FTP)
- Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)

#### 😮 Note:

Both FTP and TFTP clients are supported by the switch. The switch does not launch FTP and TFTP servers explicitly as a separate command; you can launch them through the ACLI copy command. If you have configured the username through the boot config host command, the FTP client is used to transfer files to and from the switch using the ACLI copy command; If you have not configured the username, the TFTP client is used to transfer files to and from the switch using the ACLI copy command; If switch using the ACLI copy command.

Configuring the boot config flags ftpd or boot config flags tftpd enables the FTP or TFTP Servers on the switch.

The switch supports the following non active clients using IPv4 and IPv6:

- Domain Name System (DNS)
- Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS)

#### Servers

#### IPv4 and IPv6 support:

The switch supports the following servers using IPv4:

- File Transfer Protocol (FTP)
- Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP)
- Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure (HTTPS)
- remote shell (rsh)
- rlogin
- Secure Copy (SCP)

#### Note:

The current release does not support Secure Copy (SCP).

- Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP)
- Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2)
- Telnet
- Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)

# Chapter 5: Boot parameter configuration using ACLI

Use the procedures in this section to configure and manage the boot process.

• To perform the procedures in this section, you must log on to Global Configuration mode in ACLI. For more information about how to use ACLI and how to log on to the software, see *Using ACLI and EDM on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-103.

## Modifying the boot sequence

#### About this task

Modify the boot sequence to prevent the switch from using the factory default settings or, conversely, to prevent loading a saved configuration file.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Bypass the loading of the switch configuration file and load the factory defaults:

boot config flags factorydefaults

3. Use a configuration file and not the factory defaults:

no boot config flags factorydefaults

#### Important:

If the switch fails to read and load a saved configuration file after it starts, please check the log file to see if the log file indicate that the factorydefaults setting was enabled, before you investigate other options.

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
Switch:1# configure terminal
```

```
Switch:1# boot config flags factorydefaults
```

## Configuring the remote host logon

#### Before you begin

 The FTP server must support the FTP passive (PASV) command. If the FTP server does not support the passive command, the file transfer is aborted, and then the system logs an error message that indicates that the FTP server does not support the passive command.

#### About this task

Configure the remote host logon to modify parameters for FTP and TFTP access. The defaults allow TFTP transfers. If you want to use FTP as the transfer mechanism, you need to change the password to a non-null value.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
```

configure terminal

2. Define conditions for the remote host logon:

boot config host {ftp-debug|password WORD<0-16>|tftp-debug|tftphash|tftp-rexmit <1-120>|tftp-timeout <1-120>|user WORD<0-16>}

3. Save the changed configuration.

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

Switch:1# configure terminal

Enable console tftp/tftpd debug messages:

Switch:1# boot config host tftp-debug

Switch:1# save config

## **Enabling remote access services**

Enable the remote access service to provide multiple methods of remote access.

#### Before you begin

• If you enable the rlogind flag, you must configure an access policy to specify the name of the user who can access the switch. For more information about access policies, see *Configuring Security on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-601.

#### About this task

File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP), remote login (rlogin), Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2), and Telnet server support IPv4 addresses.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable the access service:

boot config flags {ftpd|rlogind|sshd|telnetd|tftpd}

3. Save the configuration.

#### Example

Enable the access service to SSHv2:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#boot config flags sshd
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the boot config flags command.

#### Table 8: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
block-snmp	Activates or disables Simple Network Management Protocol management. The default value is false (disabled), which permits SNMP access.
debug-config [console]   [file]	Enables you to debug the configuration file during loading configuration at system boot up. The default is disabled. You do not have to restart the switch after you enable debug-config, unless you want to immediately debug the configuration. After you enable debug-config and save the configuration, the debug output either displays on the console or logs to an output file the next time the switch reboots.
	The options are:
	<ul> <li>debug-config [console]—Displays the line-by-line configuration file processing and result of the execution on the console while the device loads the configuration file.</li> </ul>

Variable	Value
	<ul> <li>debug-config [file]— Logs the line-by-line configuration file processing and result of the execution to the debug file while the device loads the configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/debugconfig_primary.txt for the primary configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/ debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup configuration, if the backup configuration file loads.</li> </ul>
debugmode	Enabling the debugmode will provide the opportunity to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
enhancedsecure-mode	Enables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.
factorydefaults	Specifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.
ftpd	Activates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled.
hsecure	Activates or disables High Secure mode. The hsecure command provides the following password behavior:
	10 character enforcement
	• The password must contain a minimum of 2 uppercase characters, 2 lowercase characters, 2 numbers, and 2 special characters.
	Aging time
	Failed login attempt limitation
	The default value is disabled. If you enable High Secure mode, you must restart the switch to enforce

Variable	Value
	secure passwords. If you operate the switch in High Secure mode, the switch prompts a password change if you enter invalid-length passwords.
logging	The logging command is used to activate or disable system logging. The default value is enabled. The system names log files according to the following:
	<ul> <li>File names appear in 8.3 (log.xxxxxxx.sss) format.</li> </ul>
	• The first 6 characters of the file name contain the last three bytes of the chassis base MAC address.
	• The next two characters in the file name specify the slot number of the CPU that generated the logs.
	• The last three characters in the file name are the sequence number of the log file.
	The system generates multiple sequence numbers for the same chassis and same slot if the system reaches the maximum log file size.
reboot	Activates or disables automatic reboot on a fatal error. The default value is activated.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
rlogind	Activates or disables the rlogin and rsh server. The default value is disabled.
spanning-tree-mode <mstp rstp></mstp rstp>	Specifies the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol or Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol mode. If you do not specify a protocol, the switch uses the default mode. The default mode is mstp. If you change the spanning tree mode, you must save the current configuration and restart the switch.
spbm-config-mode	Enables you to configure SPB and IS-IS, but you cannot configure PIM and IGMP either globally or on an interface.
	Use the no operator so that you can configure PIM and IGMP.
	The boot flag is enabled by default. To set this flag to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
sshd	Activates or disables the SSHv2 server service. The default value is enabled.

Variable	Value
telnetd	Activates or disables the Telnet server service. The default is disabled.
tftpd	Activates or disables Trivial File Transfer Protocol server service. The default value is disabled.
trace-logging	Activates or disables the creation of trace logs. The default value is disabled.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
verify-config	Activates syntax checking of the configuration file. The default is enabled.
	<ul> <li>Primary config behavior: When the verifyconfig flag is enabled, the primary config file is pre-checked for syntax errors. If the system finds an error, the primary config file is not loaded, instead the system loads the backup config file.</li> </ul>
	If the verify-config flag is disabled, the system does not pre-check syntax errors. When the verify- config flag is disabled, the system ignores any lines with errors during loading of the primary config file. If the primary config file is not present or cannot be found, the system tries to load the backup file.
	<ul> <li>Backup config behavior: If the system loads the backup config file, the system does not check the backup file for syntax errors. It does not matter if the verify-config flag is disabled or enabled. With the backup config file, the system ignores any lines with errors during the loading of the backup config file.</li> </ul>
	If no backup config file exists, the system defaults to factory defaults.
	Avaya recommends that you disable the verify- config flag.

## Changing the primary or secondary boot configuration files

#### About this task

Change the primary or secondary boot configuration file to specify which configuration file the system uses to start.

Configure the primary boot choices.

You have a primary configuration file that specifies the full directory path and a secondary configuration file that also contains the full directory path.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

2. Change the primary boot choice:

```
boot config choice primary {backup-config-file|config-file} WORD<0-
255>
```

- 3. Save the changed configuration.
- 4. Restart the switch.

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Specify the configuration file in internal flash memory as the primary boot source:

```
Switch:1(config) # boot config choice primary config-file /intflash/
config.cfg
Switch:1(config) # save config
```

Switch:1(config)# reset

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the boot config command.

#### **Table 9: Variable definitions**

Variable	Value
{backup-config-file config-file}	Specifies that the boot source uses either the configuration file or a backup configuration file.
WORD<0-255>	Identifies the configuration file. <i>WORD&lt;0–255&gt;</i> is the device and file name, up to 255 characters including the path, in one of the following format:
	• a.b.c.d: <file></file>
	<ul> <li>/usb/<file>"</file></li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>/intflash/<file></file></li> </ul>
	To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.

## **Configuring boot flags using ACLI**

#### Before you begin

• If you enable the hsecure flag, you cannot enable the flags for the Web server or SSH password-authentication.



After you change certain configuration parameters using the boot config flags command, you must save the changes to the configuration file.

#### About this task

Configure the boot flags to enable specific services and functions for the chassis.

```
File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) and Telnet server support IPv4 addresses.
```

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable boot flags:

```
boot config flags <block-snmp|debug-config [file]|debugmode|
factorydefaults|ftpd|hsecure|logging|reboot|rlogind|spbm-config-
mode|spanning-tree-mode <mstp|rstp>|sshd|telnetd|tftpd|trace-
logging|verify-config>
```

3. Disable boot flags:

no boot config flags <block-snmp|debug-config|debugmode|
factorydefaults|ftpd|hsecure|logging|reboot|rlogind|spbm-configmode|spanning-tree-mode|sshd|telnetd|tftpd|trace-logging|verifyconfig>

4. Configure the boot flag to the default value:

```
default boot config flags <block-snmp|debug-config [file]|debugmode|
factorydefaults|ftpd|hsecure|logging|reboot|rlogind|spbm-config-
mode|spanning-tree-mode|sshd|telnetd|tftpd|trace-logging|verify-
config>
```

- 5. Save the changed configuration.
- 6. Restart the switch.

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Activate High Secure mode:

Switch:1(config) # boot config flags hsecure

Switch:1(config) # save config

Switch:1(config) # reset

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the boot config flags command.

#### Table 10: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
block-snmp	Activates or disables Simple Network Management Protocol management. The default value is false (disabled), which permits SNMP access.
debug-config [console]   [file]	Enables you to debug the configuration file during loading configuration at system boot up. The default is disabled. You do not have to restart the switch after you enable debug-config, unless you want to immediately debug the configuration. After you enable debug-config and save the configuration, the debug output either displays on the console or logs to an output file the next time the switch reboots.

The options are:       • debug-config (console)—Displays the line-by-line configuration file processing and result of the execution on the console while the device loads the configuration file.         • debug-config (file)—Logs the line-by-line configuration file processing and result of the execution to the debug file while the device loads the configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /inflash/debugconfig_primary.txt for the primary configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /inflash/ debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup configuration, if the backup configuration file. The system logs the debug config the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.         @ Important:       Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.         enhancedsecure-mode       Enables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role-based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password complexity, password change intervals, password requirements, and stronger the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.         ftpd       Activates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled.         hsecure       Activates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled.         Important:       Discretion of the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the Stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password c	Variable	Value
configuration file processing and result of the execution on the console while the device loads the configuration file.• debug-config [file]— Logs the line-by-line configuration file processing and result of the execution to the debug file while the device loads the configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to initfash/debugconfig_ninary.txt for the primary configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to initfash/debugconfig_ninary.txt debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup configuration, if the backup configuration file loads.debugmodeEnabling the debug file while the device loads the debug config output to initfash/debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup configuration, if the backup configuration file loads.debugmodeEnabling the debugmode will provide the opportunity to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.enhancedsecure-modeEnables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password length, password reuse, and password change intervals, password reuse, and password neavinum age use.factorydefaultsSpecifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled.ftpdActivates or disables the following password behavior:		The options are:
configuration file processing and result of the execution to the debug file while the device loads the configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/debugconfig_primary.txt for the primary configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/ debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup configuration file the system logsdebugmodeEnabling the debugmode will provide the opportunity to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.enhancedsecure-modeEnables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password nequirements, and stronger rules on password maximum age use.factorydefaultsSpecifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at stratup. The default value is disabled.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled.		configuration file processing and result of the execution on the console while the device loads
to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.Important: Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.enhancedsecure-modeEnables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch. The default value is disabled.ftpdActivates or disables the TP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. The default value is disabled.		configuration file processing and result of the execution to the debug file while the device loads the configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/debugconfig_primary.txt for the primary configuration file. The system logs the debug config output to /intflash/ debugconfig_backup.txt for the backup
Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.enhancedsecure-modeEnables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password change intervals, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.factorydefaultsSpecifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled. The head or disables the following password behavior:	debugmode	to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console
by Avaya.enhancedsecure-modeEnables enhanced secure mode. If you enable enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.factorydefaultsSpecifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, 		Important:
enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.factorydefaultsSpecifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled.hsecureActivates or disables High Secure mode. The hsecure command provides the following password behavior:		
settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.ftpdActivates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled.hsecureActivates or disables High Secure mode. The hsecure command provides the following password behavior:	enhancedsecure-mode	enhanced secure mode the switch provides role- based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum
The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the tftpd flag is disabled.hsecureActivates or disables High Secure mode. The hsecure command provides the following password behavior:	factorydefaults	settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter,
hsecure command provides the following password behavior:	ftpd	The default value is disabled. To enable FTP,
10 character enforcement	hsecure	hsecure command provides the following password
		10 character enforcement

Variable	Value
	The password must contain a minimum of 2 uppercase characters, 2 lowercase characters, 2 numbers, and 2 special characters.
	Aging time
	Failed login attempt limitation
	The default value is disabled. If you enable High Secure mode, you must restart the switch to enforce secure passwords. If you operate the switch in High Secure mode, the switch prompts a password change if you enter invalid-length passwords.
logging	The logging command is used to activate or disable system logging. The default value is enabled. The system names log files according to the following:
	<ul> <li>File names appear in 8.3 (log.xxxxxxx.sss) format.</li> </ul>
	• The first 6 characters of the file name contain the last three bytes of the chassis base MAC address.
	• The next two characters in the file name specify the slot number of the CPU that generated the logs.
	• The last three characters in the file name are the sequence number of the log file.
	The system generates multiple sequence numbers for the same chassis and same slot if the system reaches the maximum log file size.
reboot	Activates or disables automatic reboot on a fatal error. The default value is activated.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
rlogind	Activates or disables the rlogin and rsh server. The default value is disabled.
spanning-tree-mode <mstp rstp></mstp rstp>	Specifies the Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol or Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol mode. If you do not specify a protocol, the switch uses the default mode. The default mode is mstp. If you change the spanning tree mode, you must save the current configuration and restart the switch.
spbm-config-mode	Enables you to configure SPB and IS-IS, but you cannot configure PIM and IGMP either globally or on an interface.

Variable	Value
	Use the no operator so that you can configure PIM and IGMP.
	The boot flag is enabled by default. To set this flag to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
sshd	Activates or disables the SSHv2 server service. The default value is enabled.
telnetd	Activates or disables the Telnet server service. The default is disabled.
tftpd	Activates or disables Trivial File Transfer Protocol server service. The default value is disabled.
trace-logging	Activates or disables the creation of trace logs. The default value is disabled.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
verify-config	Activates syntax checking of the configuration file. The default is enabled.
	<ul> <li>Primary config behavior: When the verifyconfig flag is enabled, the primary config file is pre-checked for syntax errors. If the system finds an error, the primary config file is not loaded, instead the system loads the backup config file.</li> </ul>
	If the verify-config flag is disabled, the system does not pre-check syntax errors. When the verify- config flag is disabled, the system ignores any lines with errors during loading of the primary config file. If the primary config file is not present or cannot be found, the system tries to load the backup file.
	<ul> <li>Backup config behavior: If the system loads the backup config file, the system does not check the backup file for syntax errors. It does not matter if the verify-config flag is disabled or enabled. With the backup config file, the system ignores any lines with errors during the loading of the backup config file.</li> </ul>
	If no backup config file exists, the system defaults to factory defaults.
	Avaya recommends that you disable the verify- config flag.

## **Configuring serial port devices**

#### About this task

Configure the serial port devices to define connection settings for the console port (10101).

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Optionally, specify 8 data bits:

boot config sio console 8databits

3. Optionally, change the baud rate for the port:

boot config sio console baud <9600-115200>

- 4. Save the changed configuration.
- 5. Restart the switch.

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

Switch:1# config terminal

Configure the baud rate to 9600 for the port:

Switch:1(config) # boot config sio console baud 9600

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the boot config sio console command.

#### Table 11: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
8databits	Specifies either 8 (true) or 7 (false) data bits for each byte for the software to interpret. The default value is 8 data bits. Use the no or default operator with the command to configure this variable to the false condition.
baud <9600-115200>	Configures the baud rate for the port from one of:
	• 9600
	• 19200
	• 38400
	• 57600
	• 115200

Variable	Value
	The default value is 9600. To configure this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
	the delaut operator with the command.

## **Displaying the boot configuration**

#### About this task

Display the configuration to view current or changed settings for the boot parameters.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. View the configuration:

```
show boot config <choice|flags|general|host|running-config
[verbose]|sio>
```

#### Example

Show the current boot configuration. (If you omit verbose, the system only displays the values that you changed from their default value.):

Switch:1>enable

Switch:1#configure terminal Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z. Switch:1#(config)#show boot config running-config # #Thu Mar 20 15:12:01 2014 UTC # boot config flags ftpd boot config flags rlogind boot config flags shd boot config flags telnetd boot config flags tetnetd boot config flags verify-config boot config flags verify-config boot config choice primary backup-config-file "/intflash/config.cfg"

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the show boot config command.

#### Table 12: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
choice	Shows the current boot configuration choices.
flags	Shows the current flag settings.
general	Shows system information.
host	Shows the current host configuration.
running-config [verbose]	Shows the current boot configuration. If you use verbose, the system displays all possible information. If you omit verbose, the system displays only the values that you changed from their default value.
sio	Specifies the current configuration of the serial ports.

# Chapter 6: Run-time process management using ACLI

Configure and manage the run-time process using the Avaya Command Line Interface (ACLI).

To perform the procedures in this section, you must log on to Global Configuration mode in ACLI. For more information about how to use ACLI, see *Using ACLI and EDM on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-103.

## Configuring the date

#### About this task

Configure the calendar time in the form of month, day, year, hour, minute, and second.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

- 2. Log on as rwa to perform this procedure.
- 3. Configure the date:

clock set <MMddyyyyhhmmss>

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
Switch:1# clock set 19042014063030
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the clock set command.

#### Table 13: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
MMddyyyyhhmmss	Specifies the date and time in the format month, day, year, hour, minute, and second.

## Configuring the time zone

#### About this task

Configure the time zone to use an internal system clock to maintain accurate time. The time zone data in Linux includes daylight changes for all time zones up to the year 2038. You do not need to configure daylight savings.

The default time zone is Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

#### Important:

According to a recent bill passed by the government of Russia, from October 2014, Moscow has moved from current UTC+4 into UTC+3 time zone, with no daylight savings.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the time zone by using the following command:

```
clock time-zone WORD<1-10> WORD<1-20> WORD<1-20>
```

3. Save the changed configuration.

#### Example

Configure the system to use the time zone data file for Vevay:

Switch:1(config) # clock time-zone America Indiana Vevay

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the clock time-zone command.

#### Table 14: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<1-10>	Specifies a directory name or a time zone name in /usr/share/zoneinfo, for example, Africa, Australia, Antarctica, or US. To see a list of options, enter
	clock time-zone
	at the command prompt without variables.
WORD<1-20> WORD<1-20>	The first instance of <i>WORD</i> <1-20> is the area within the timezone. The value represents a time zone data file in /usr/share/zoneinfo/ WORD<1-10>/, for example, Shanghai in Asia.
	The second instance of <i>WORD</i> <1-20>is the subarea. The value represents a time zone data file in /usr/share/zoneinfo/WORD<1-10>/WORD<1-20>/, for example, Vevay in America/Indiana.
	To see a list of options, enter clock time-zone at the command prompt without variables.

## Configuring the run-time environment

#### About this task

Configure the run-time environment to define generic configuration settings for ACLI sessions.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Change the login prompt:

login-message WORD<1-1513>

3. Change the password prompt:

passwordprompt WORD<1-1510>

4. Configure the number of supported rlogin sessions:

max-logins <0-8>

5. Configure the number of supported inbound Telnet sessions:

telnet-access sessions <0-8>

- 6. Configure the idle timeout period before automatic logoff for ACLI and Telnet sessions: cli timeout <30-65535>
- 7. Configure the number of lines in the output display:

terminal length <8-64>

8. Configure scrolling for the output display:

terminal more <disable|enable>

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:# configure terminal

Use the default option to enable use of the default logon string:

Switch:(config)#default login-message

Use the default option before this parameter to enable use of the default string:

Switch:(config) # default passwordprompt

Configure the allowable number of inbound remote ACLI logon sessions:

Switch: (config) # max-logins 5

Configure the allowable number of inbound Telnet sessions:

Switch: (config) # telnet-access sessions 8

Configure the timeout value, in seconds, to wait for a Telnet or ACLI login session before terminating the connection:

Switch: (config) # cli timeout 900

Configure the number of lines in the output display for the current session:

Switch: (config) # terminal length 30

Configure scrolling for the output display:

```
Switch: (config) # terminal more disable
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the login-message command.

#### Table 15: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<1-1513>	Changes the ACLI logon prompt.
	<ul> <li>WORD&lt;1-1513&gt; is an American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) string from 1–1513 characters.</li> </ul>
	• Use the default option before this parameter, default login-message, to enable use of the default logon string.

Variable	Value
	• Use the no operator before this parameter, no login-
	message, to disable the default logon banner and
	display the new banner.

Use the data in the following table to use the passwordprompt command.

#### Table 16: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<1-1510>	Changes the ACLI password prompt.
	<ul> <li>WORD&lt;1-1510&gt; is an ASCII string from 1–1510 characters.</li> </ul>
	• Use the default option before this parameter, default passwordprompt, to enable using the default string.
	• Use the no operator before this parameter, no passwordprompt, to disable the default string.

Use the data in the following table to use the max-logins command.

#### Table 17: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
	Configures the allowable number of inbound remote ACLI logon sessions. The default value is 8.

Use the data in the following table to use the telnet-access sessions command.

#### Table 18: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<0-8>	Configures the allowable number of inbound Telnet sessions. The default value is 8.

Use the data in the following table to use the cli time-out command.

#### Table 19: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<30-65535>	Configures the timeout value, in seconds, to wait for a Telnet or ACLI login session before terminating the connection.

Use the data in the following table to use the terminal command.

#### Table 20: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<8–64>	Configures the number of lines in the output display for the current session. To configure this option to the default value, use thedefault operator with the command. The default is value 23.
disable enable	Configures scrolling for the output display. The default is enabled. Use the no operator to remove this configuration. To configure this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command. no

## Configuring the logon banner

#### About this task

Configure the logon banner to display a warning message to users before authentication.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the switch to use a custom banner or use the default banner:

banner <custom|static>

3. Create a custom banner:

banner WORD<1-80>

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

#### Activate the use of the default banner:

```
Switch:1(config) # banner static
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the banner command.

#### Table 21: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
custom static	Activates or disables use of the default banner.
displaymotd	Enables displaymotd.
motd	Sets the message of the day banner.
WORD<1-80>	Adds lines of text to the ACLI logon banner.

## Configuring the message-of-the-day

#### About this task

Configure a system login message-of-the-day in the form of a text banner that appears after each successful logon.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Create the message-of-the-day:

banner motd WORD<1-1516>

3. Enable the custom message-of-the-day:

banner displaymotd

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Create a message-of-the-day to display with the logon banner. (To provide a string with spaces, include the text in quotation marks.):

Switch:1(config) # banner motd "Unauthorized access is forbidden"

Enable the custom message-of-the-day:

```
Switch:1(config) # banner displaymotd
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the banner motd command.

#### Table 22: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<1-1516>	Creates a message of the day to display with the logon banner. To provide a string with spaces, include the text in quotation marks ("). To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.

## **Configuring ACLI logging**

#### About this task

Use ACLI logging to track all ACLI commands executed and for fault management purposes. The ACLI commands are logged to the system log file as CLILOG module.

#### 😵 Note:

The platform logs CLILOG and SNMPLOG as INFO. Normally, if you configure the logging level to WARNING, the system skips all INFO messages. However, if you enable CLILOG and SNMPLOG the system logs ACLI Log and SNMP Log information regardless of the logging level you set. This is not the case for other INFO messages.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable ACLI logging:

clilog enable

3. Disable ACLI logging:

no clilog enable

4. Ensure that the configuration is correct:

show clilog

5. View the ACLI log:

show logging file module clilog

6. View the ACLI log.

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

- Switch:1# configure terminal
- Switch:1(config) # clilog enable

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the clilog commands.

#### Table 23: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
enable	Activates ACLI logging. To disable, use the no clilog
	enable <b>command</b> .

## **Configuring system parameters**

#### About this task

Configure individual system-level switch parameters to configure global options for the switch.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Change the system name:

sys name WORD<0-255>

3. Enable support for Jumbo frames:

```
sys mtu 1950
```

OR

sys mtu 9600

4. Enable the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) checksum calculation:

udp checksum

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Configure the system, or root level, prompt name for the switch:

Switch:1(config) # sys name Floor3Lab2

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the sys command.

#### Table 24: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
mtu <1522 9600>	Activates Jumbo frame support for the data path. The value can be either 1522, 1950 (default), or 9600 bytes. 1950 or 9600 bytes activate Jumbo frame support.
name WORD<0-255>	Configures the system, or root level, prompt name for the switch.
	WORD<0–255> is an ASCII string from 0–255 characters (for example, LabSC7 or Closet4).
clipId-topology-ip	Set the topology ip from the available CLIP.
	WORD<1-256>Specifies the Circuitless IP interface id.
force-msg	Adds forced message control pattern.
	WORD<4-4> Enter force message pattern.
force-topology-ip-flag	Flag set to force choice of topology flag.
	enable
msg-control	Enbales system message control feature.

## Configuring system message control

#### About this task

Configure system message control to suppress duplicate error messages on the console, and to determine the action to take if they occur.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure system message control action:

sys msg-control action <both|send-trap|suppress-msg>

3. Configure the maximum number of messages:

sys msg-control max-msg-num <2-500>

4. Configure the interval:

sys msg-control control-interval <1-30>

5. Enable message control:

sys msg-control

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Configure system message control to suppress duplicate error messages on the console and send a trap notification:

Switch:1(config) # sys msg-control action both

Configure the number of occurrences of a message after which the control action occurs:

Switch:1(config) # sys msg-control max-msg-num 2

Configure the message control interval in minutes:

Switch:1(config) # sys msg-control control-interval 3

Enable message control:

Switch:1(config) # sys msg-control

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the sys msg-control command.

#### Table 25: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
action <both send-trap suppress-msg></both send-trap suppress-msg>	Configures the message control action. You can either suppress the message or send a trap notification, or both. The default is suppress.
control-interval <1-30>	Configures the message control interval in minutes. The valid options are 1–30. The default is 5.
max-msg-num <2-500>	Configures the number of occurrences of a message after which the control action occurs. To configure the maximum number of occurrences, enter a value from 2–500. The default is 5.

## Extending system message control

#### About this task

Use the force message control option to extend the message control feature functionality to the software and hardware log messages.

To enable the message control feature, you must specify an action, control interval, and maximum message number. After you enable the feature, the log messages, which get repeated and cross the maximum message number in the control interval, trigger the force message feature. You can either suppress the message or send a trap notification, or both.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

2. Configure the force message control option:

sys force-msg WORD<4-4>

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Configure the force message control option. (If you specify the wildcard pattern (\*\*\*\*), then all messages undergo message control:

Switch:1(config) # sys force-msg \*\*\*\*

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the sys force-msg command.

#### Table 26: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<4-4>	Adds a forced message control pattern, where <i>WORD</i> <4-4> is a string of 4 characters. You can add a four-byte pattern into the force-msg table. The software and the hardware log messages that use the first four bytes that match one of the patterns in the force-msg table undergo the configured message control action. You can specify up to 32 different patterns in the force-msg table, including a wildcard pattern (****) as well. If you specify the wildcard pattern, all messages undergo message control.

## **Chapter 7: Chassis operations**

The following sections provide information for chassis operations such as hardware and software compatibility.

## **Chassis operations fundamentals**

This section provides conceptual information for chassis operations such as hardware and software compatibility and power management. Read this section before you configure the chassis operations.

#### Management port

The management port is a 10/100/1000 Mb/s Ethernet port that you can use for an out-of-band management connection to the switch.

To remotely access the switch using the management port, you have to configure an IP address for the management port.

#### **Management Router VRF**

The switch has a separate VRF called Management Router (MgmtRouter) reserved for OAM (mgmt) port.. The configured IP subnet has to be globally unique because the management protocols, for example, SNMP, Telnet, and FTP, can go through in-band or out-of-band ports. The VRF ID for the Management Router is 512.

The switch never switches or routes transit packets between the Management Router VRF port and the Global Router VRF, or between the Management Router VRF and other VRF ports.

Avaya honors the VRF of the ingress packet; however, in no circumstance does the switch allow routing between the Management VRF and Global Router VRF. The switch does not support the configuration if you have an out-of-band management network with access to the same networks present in the GRT routing table.

#### Non-virtualized client management applications

Avaya recommends that you do not define a default route in the Management Router VRF. A route originating from the switch and used for non-virtualized client management applications, such as Telnet, Secure Shell (SSH), and FTP will always match a default route defined in the Management Router VRF.

If you want out-of-band management, Avaya recommends that you define a specific static route in the Management Router VRF to the IP subnet where your management application resides.

When you specify a static route in the Management Router VRF, it enables the client management applications originating from the switch to perform out-of-band management without affecting inband management. This enables in-band management applications to operate in the Global Router VRF.

Non-virtualized client management applications originating from the switch, such as Telnet, SSH, and FTP, follow the behavior listed below:

- 1. Look at the Management Router VRF route table
- 2. If no route is found, the applications will proceed to look in the Global Router VRF table

Non-virtualized client management applications include:

- DHCP Relay
- DNS
- FTP client with the copy command
- IPFIX
- NTP
- rlogin
- · RADIUS authentication and accounting
- SSH
- · SNMP clients in the form of traps
- SYSLOG
- TACACS+
- Telnet
- TFTP client

For management applications that originate outside the switch, the initial incoming packets establish a VRF context that limits the return path to the same VRF context.

#### Virtualized management applications

Virtualized management applications, such as ping and traceroute, operate using the specified VRF context. To operate ping or traceroute you must specify the desired VRF context. If not specified, ping defaults to the Global Router VRF. For example, if you want to ping a device through the outof-band management port you must select the Management Router VRF.

```
VSP-8284:1(config)#ping 192.0.2.1 vrf MgmtRouter 192.0.2.1 is alive
```

## Software lock-up detection

The software lock-up detect feature monitors processes on the CPU to limit situations where the device stops functioning because of a software process issue. Monitored issues include

· software that enters a dead-lock state

• a software process that enters an infinite loop

The software lock-up detect feature monitors processes to ensure that the software functions within expected time limit.

The CPU logs detail about suspended tasks in the log file. For additional information about log files, see *Managing Faults on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-702.

## Jumbo frames

Jumbo packets and large packets are particularly useful in server and storage over Ethernet applications. If the payload to header relation increases in a packet, the bandwidth can be used more efficiently. For this reason, increasing Ethernet frame size is a logical option. The switch supports Ethernet frames as large as 9600 bytes, compared to the standard 1518 bytes, to transmit large amounts of data efficiently and minimize the task load on a server CPU.

#### **Tagged VLAN support**

A port with VLAN tagging activated can send tagged frames. If you plan to use Jumbo frames in a VLAN, ensure that you configure the ports in the VLAN to accept Jumbo frames and that the server or hosts in the VLAN do not send frames that exceed 9600 bytes. For more information about how to configure VLANs, see *Configuring VLANs, Spanning Tree, and NLB on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-500.

## **SynOptics Network Management Protocol**

The switch supports an auto-discovery protocol known as the SynOptics Network Management Protocol (SONMP). SONMP allows a network management station (NMS) to formulate a map that shows the interconnections between Layer 2 devices in a network. SONMP is also called Topology Discovery Protocol (TDP).

All devices in a network that are SONMP-enabled send hello packets to their immediate neighbors, that is, to interconnecting Layer 2 devices. A hello packet advertises the existence of the sending device and provides basic information about the device, such as the IP address and MAC address. The hello packets allow each device to construct a topology table of its immediate neighbors. A network management station periodically polls devices in its network for these topology tables, and then uses the data to formulate a topology map.

If you disable SONMP, the system stops transmitting and acknowledging SONMP hello packets. In addition, the system removes all entries in the topology table except its own entry. If you enable SONMP, the system transmits a hello packet every 12 seconds. The default status is enabled.

## Channelization

Channelization allows you to configure 40 Gbps QSFP+ ports to operate as four 10 Gigabit Ethernet ports. You can use QSFP+ to four SFP+ breakout cables or QSFP+ transceivers with fiber breakout cables to connect the 10 Gigabit Ethernet ports to other servers, storage, and switches.

By default, the ports are not channelized, which means that the 40 Gbps QSFP+ ports operate as 40 Gigabit Ethernet ports. You can enable or disable channelization on a port.

If you enable or disable channelization on a port, the port QoS configuration resets to default values. For information about configuring QoS values, see *Configuring QoS and ACL-Based Traffic Filtering on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-502.* 

The following list identifies channelization support:

- VSP 8200
  - Supports channelization on all four 40G ports.
- VSP 8400
  - Supports channelization on the two 40G ports of the 8418XSQ and the first six 40G ports of the 8408QQ.
- VSP 7200 Series
  - Supports channelization on all six 40G ports.

When a 40 Gigabit port is channelized, only use break out cables (DAC or Fiber) in it. Otherwise, the link behavior can be unpredictable because it can result in mismatched link status between link partners, which can further lead to network issues.

Also avoid the use of break out cables in non-channelized 40 Gigabit ports because this can result in mismatched link status between link partners, which can lead to network issues.

Note that when you use channelized ports in an SMLT configuration, you will not see the channelized ports displayed properly when you show MLT information for the remote port member if a release earlier than 4.2.0.0 is running on the remote switch. Support for channelization was added in VOSS Release 4.2.0.0.

## **Chassis operations configuration using ACLI**

This section provides the details to configure basic hardware and system settings.

## **Enabling jumbo frames**

#### About this task

Enable jumbo frames to increase the size of Ethernet frames the chassis supports.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable jumbo frames:

sys mtu <1950|1522|9600>

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

Switch:1# configure terminal

#### Enable jumbo frames to 9600 bytes:

Switch:1#(config)#sys mtu 9600

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the  ${\tt sys}$   ${\tt mtu}$  command.

#### Table 27: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
1950 9600	Configures the frame size support for the data path.
	<1950 9600> is the Ethernet frame size. Possible sizes are 1522, 1950 (default), or 9600 bytes. A configuration of either 1950 or 9600 bytes activates jumbo frame support.

## **Configuring port lock**

#### About this task

Configure port lock to administratively lock a port or ports to prevent other users from changing port parameters or modifying port action. You cannot modify a locked port until you unlock the port.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable port lock globally:

portlock enable

3. Log on to GigabitEthernet Interface Configuration mode:

```
interface gigabitethernet {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-
port]][,...]}
```

#### 4. Lock a port:

```
lock port {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]][,...]} enable
```

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Log on to GigabitEthernet Interface Configuration mode:

Switch:1(config) # interface GigabitEthernet 1/1

Unlock port 1/14:

Switch:1(config-if) # no lock port 1/14 enable

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the interface gigabitethernet and lock port commands.

#### Table 28: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
{slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]][,]}	Identifies the slot and port in one of the following formats: a single slot and port (slot/port), a range of slots and ports (slot/port-slot/port), or a series of slots and ports (slot/port,slot/port,slot/port). If your platform supports channelization for 40 Gbps ports and the port is channelized, you must also specify the sub-port in the format slot/port/sub-port.
	<pre>For the lock port command, use the no form of this command to unlock a port: no lock port {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub- port]][,]}</pre>

## **Configuring SONMP**

#### About this task

Configure the SynOptics Network Management Protocol (SONMP) to allow a network management station (NMS) formulate a map that shows the interconnections between Layer 2 devices in a network. The default status is enabled.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

2. Disable SONMP:

no autotopology

3. Enable SONMP:

autotopology

#### Example

Switch:1>enable

Switch: 1 configure terminal

#### Disable SONMP:

```
Switch:1(config) # no autotopology
```

## Viewing the topology message status

#### About this task

View topology message status to view the interconnections between Layer 2 devices in a network.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log on to the switch to enter User EXEC mode.
- 2. Show the contents of the topology table:

show autotopology nmm-table

Unless the witch is physically connected to other devices in the network, this topology will be blank.

#### Example

Switch:1(config)#show autotopology nmm-table

			Topology 1	Table				
Local								Rem
Port	IpAddress	SegmentId	MacAddress	ChassisType	ΒT	LS	CS	Port
0/0	10.139.43.35	0x000000	b0adaa419c00	VSP8404	12	Yes	HtBt	0/0
2/1	10.139.43.20	0x010102	b0adaa404004	VSP8404	12	Yes	HtBt	1/2/1
2/2/1	10.139.43.30	0x040102	b0abba404002	VSP8404	12	Yes	HtBt	3/2/2
2/2/3	10.139.43.40	0x000102	aa12ea404003	VSP9012	12	Yes	HtBt	4/1

## Note:

When a peer switch is running an older software version that does not include support for SONMP hello messages with channelization information, it can only show the slot/port. It cannot show the sub-port.

## Job aid

The following table describes the column headings in the command output for show autotopology nmm-table.

Variable	Value
Local Port	Specifies the slot and port that received the topology message.
IpAddress	Specifies the IP address of the sender of the topology message.
SegmentId	Specifies the segment identifier of the segment from which the remote agent sent the topology message. This value is extracted from the message.
MacAddress	Specifies the MAC address of the sender of the topology message.
ChassisType	Specifies the chassis type of the device that sent the topology message.
BT	Specifies the backplane type of the device that sent the topology message. The switch uses a backplane type of 12.
LS	Indicates if the sender of the topology message is on the same Ethernet segment as the reporting agent.
CS	<ul> <li>Specifies the current state of the sender of the topology message. The choices are</li> <li>topChanged—Topology information recently changed.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>HtBt (heartbeat)—Topology information is unchanged.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>new—The sending agent is in a new state.</li> </ul>
Rem Port	Specifies the slot and port that sent the topology message.

#### Table 29: Variable definitions

# Associating a port to a VRF instance

Associate a port to a Virtual Router Forwarding (VRF) instance so that the port becomes a member of the VRF instance.

#### Before you begin

• The VRF instance must exist. For more information about the creation of VRFs, see *Configuring IP Routing on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-505.

### About this task

You can assign a VRF instance to a port after you configure the VRF. The system assigns ports to the Global Router, VRF 0, by default.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Interface Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

```
interface GigabitEthernet {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-
port]][,...]} OF interface vlan <1-4059>
```

### 😵 Note:

If your platform supports channelization for 40 Gbps ports and the port is channelized, you must also specify the sub-port in the format slot/port/sub-port.

2. Associate a VRF instance with a port:

vrf <WORD 1-16>

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
Switch:1# configure terminal
Switch:1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/12
Switch:1(config-if)# vrf red
```

# Configuring an IP address for the management port

Configure an IP address for the management port so that you can remotely access the device using the out-of-band (OOB) management port. The management port runs on a dedicated VRF.

The configured IP subnet has to be globally unique because the management protocols can go through in-band (Global Router) or out-of-band ports (Management VRF).

### Before you begin

- Do not configure a default route in the Management VRF.
- If you want out-of-band management, Avaya recommends that you define a specific static route in the Management Router VRF to the IP subnet where your management application resides.
- If you initiate an FTP session from a client device behind a firewall, you should set FTP to passive mode.
- The switch gives priority to out-of-band management when there is reachability from both inband and out-of-band. To avoid a potential conflict, do not configure any overlapping between in-band and out-of-band networks.

#### 😵 Note:

For more information about the management port, see Administering Avaya Virtual Services *Platform* 7200 Series and 8000 Series.

#### Procedure

1. Enter mgmtEthernet Interface Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

interface mgmtEthernet mgmt

2. Configure the IP address and mask for the management port:

ip address<A.B.C.D> <A.B.C.D>

3. Configure an IPv6 address and prefix length for the management port:

ipv6 interface address WORD<0-255>

4. Show the complete network management information:

show interface mgmtEthernet

5. Show the management interface packet/link errors:

show interface mgmtEthernet error

6. Show the management interface statistics information:

show interface mgmtEthernet statistics

#### Example

Configure the IP address for the management port:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#interface mgmtethernet mgmt
Switch:1(config-if)#ip address 192.0.2.31 255.255.255.0
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ip address command.

Variable	Value
<a.b.c.d> <a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d>	Specifies the IP address followed by the subnet mask.

Use the data in the following table to use the ipv6 interface address command.

Variable	Value
WORD<0-255>	Specifies the IPv6 address and prefix length.

# **Configuring Ethernet ports with Autonegotiation**

Configure Ethernet ports so they operate optimally for your network conditions. These ports use the Small Form Factor Pluggable plus (SFP+) transceivers. The default is enabled for VSP 8000 Series but disabled for VSP 7200 Series.

#### About this task

#### Important:

- When you use 1 Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers on VSP 7254XSQ, the software disables auto-negotiation on the port:
  - If you use 1 Gbps fiber SFP transceivers, the remote end must also have autonegotiation disabled.
  - If you use 1 Gbps copper SFP transceivers, the remote end must have auto-negotiation enabled. If not, the link will not be established.
- All ports that belong to the same MLT or Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) group must use the same port speed. In the case of MLTs, the software does not enforce this.
- Release 4.0 is lenient in allowing mismatched autonegotiation settings between local ports and their remote link partners.
- VOSS 4.1 and later software requires the same autonegotiation settings on link partners to avoid incorrect declaration of link status. Mismatched settings can cause the links to stay down. Ensure the autonegotiation settings between local ports and their remote link partners match before upgrading software Release 4.0 to VOSS 4.1 or later.

#### Procedure

1. Enter GigabitEthernet Interface Configuration mode:

```
enable
configure terminal
interface GigabitEthernet {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-
port]][,...]}
```

#### 😵 Note:

If your platform supports channelization for 40 Gbps ports and the port is channelized, you must also specify the sub-port in the format slot/port/sub-port.

2. Enable Autonegotiation:

```
auto-negotiate [port {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]]
[,...]}] enable
```

3. Disable Autonegotiation:

```
no auto-negotiate [port {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]]
[,...]}] enable
```

### Example

```
Switch:>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#interface gigabitethernet 4/2
Switch:1(config-if)#auto-negotiate enable
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in following table to use the **auto-negotiate** command.

Variable	Value
{slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]][,]}	Specifies the port or ports that you want to configure.
enable	Enables Autonegotiation for the port or other ports of the module.
	The default is enabled for VSP 8000 Series but disabled for VSP 7200 Series.
	🛪 Note:
	The 10 GigabitEthernet fiber-based ports can operate at either 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps) or 10 Gbps, dependent upon the capabilities optical transceiver that you install.
	This presents an ambiguity with respect to the autonegotiation settings of the port, while 1 Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) ports require autonegotiation; autonegotiation is not defined and is non-existent for 10 GbE ports.
	For a 10GbE fiber-based port, you have the capability to swap back-and-forth between 1 GbE and 10 GbE operation by simply swapping transceivers. To help with this transition between 1 GbE and 10 GbE port operation, Avaya allows you to configure autonegotiation when you install a 10 GbE transceiver, even though autonegotiation is not defined for 10GbE.
	You can do this in anticipation of a port changeover from 10 GbE to 1 GbE. In this manner, you could essentially preconfigure a port in 1 GbE mode while the 10 GbE transceiver is still installed. The port is ready to go upon the changeover to the 1 GbE transceiver.
	In addition, you can use a saved configuration file with autonegotiation enabled to boot a system with either 10 GbE or 1 GbE transceivers installed. If you install a 1 GbE

Variable	Value
	transceiver, the system applies autonegotiation. If you install a 10 GbE transceiver, the system does not remove the autonegotiation settings from the configuration, but the system simply ignores the configuration because autonegotiation settings are irrelevant to a 10 GbE transceiver. The system preserves the saved configuration for autonegotiation when resaved no matter which speed of transceiver you install.

# **Enabling channelization**

Enable channelization on 40 Gbps QSFP+ ports to configure them to operate as four 10 Gbps Ethernet ports.

### 😵 Note:

Enabling or disabling channelization resets the port QoS configuration to default values. For information about configuring QoS values, see *Configuring QoS and ACL-Based Traffic Filtering on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-502.* 

### Procedure

1. Enter GigabitEthernet Interface Configuration mode:

```
enable
configure terminal
interface GigabitEthernet {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-
port]][,...]}
```

#### 😵 Note:

If your platform supports channelization for 40 Gbps ports and the port is channelized, you must also specify the sub-port in the format slot/port/sub-port.

2. Enable channelization on a port:

channelize [port {slot/port[-slot/port][,...]}] enable

3. Display the status of the ports:

```
show interfaces gigabitEthernet channelize [{slot/port[-slot/port]
[,...]}]
```

To display the details of the sub-ports, use:

```
show interfaces gigabitEthernet channelize detail [{slot/port/sub-
port[-slot/port/sub-port][,...]}]
```

4. To disable channelization on a port, enter:

```
no channelize [port {slot/port/sub-port[-slot/port/sub-port][,...]}]
enable
```

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
Switch:1# configure terminal
Switch:1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/2
Switch:1(config-if)# channelize enable
```

#### Display the port status:

Switch:1(config) # show interfaces gigabitEthernet channelize 1/2-1/4

Port Channelization		
PORT	ADMIN MODE	CHANNEL TYPE
1/2 1/3 1/4	true false false	40G 40G 40G

The following is an example of how to disable channelization on a port:

```
Switch:1> enable
Switch:1# configure terminal
Switch:1(config)# interface gigabitethernet 1/2/1
Switch:1(config-if)# no channelize enable
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in following table to use the **channelization** command.

Variable	Value
{slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/sub-port]][,]}	Identifies the slot and port in one of the following formats: a single slot and port (slot/port), a range of slots and ports (slot/port-slot/port), or a series of slots and ports (slot/port,slot/port,slot/port). If your platform supports channelization for 40 Gbps ports and the port is channelized, you must also specify the sub-port in the format slot/port/sub-port.

# Configuring serial management port dropping

Configure the serial management ports to drop a connection that is interrupted for any reason. If you enable serial port dropping, the serial management ports drop the connection for the following reasons:

- modem power failure
- link disconnection
- · loss of the carrier

Serial ports interrupted due to link disconnection, power failure, or other reasons force out the user and end the user session. Ending the user session ensures a maintenance port is not available with an active session that can allow unauthorized use by someone other than the authenticated user, and prevents the physical hijacking of an active session by unplugging the connected cable and plugging in another.

By default, the feature is disabled with enhanced secure mode disabled. If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the default is enabled.

For more information on enhanced secure mode, see <u>Enabling enhanced secure mode</u> on page 181.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the serial port to drop if a connection is interrupted:

sys security-console

#### Example

Configure the serial port to drop if a connection is interrupted:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#sys security-console
```

## **Controlling slot power**

#### About this task

The sys power slot command is used to control slot power on an Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8400.

#### Important:

This command is only available for use with the Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8400.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure slot power:

```
[no] sys power slot {slot[-slot][,...]}
```

### Example

Enable power to Slot 1:

Switch:1 (config) # sys power slot 1

Disable power to Slot 1:

Switch:1 (config) # no sys power slot 1

Enable power to Slots 1 and 2:

Switch:1 (config) # sys power slot 1, 2

Disable power to Slots 1 and 2:

Switch:1 (config) # no sys power slot 1, 2

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the sys power slot command.

Variable	Value
{slot[-slot][,]}	Identifies the slot in one of the following formats: a single slot (1), a range of slots 1–3), or a series of slots (1,2,4).

# Chassis operations configuration using EDM

This section provides the details to configure basic hardware and system settings using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

## **Editing system information**

#### About this task

You can edit system information, such as the contact person, the name of the device, and the location to identify the equipment.

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **System** tab.
- 5. Type the contact information in the sysContact field.
- 6. Type the system name in the **sysName** field.

- 7. Type the location information in the **sysLocation** field.
- 8. Click Apply.

# System field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **System** tab.

Name	Description
sysDescr	Shows the system assigned name and the software version.
sysUpTime	Shows the elapsed time since the system last started.
sysContact	Configures the contact information (in this case, an email address) for the Avaya support group.
sysName	Configures the name of this device.
sysLocation	Configures the physical location of this device.
Virtuallpv6Addr	Specifies the virtual IPv6 address.
Virtuallpv6PrefixLength	Specifies the length of the virtual IPv6 address prefix (in bits).
DnsDomainName	Configures the default domain for querying the DNS server.
LastChange	Displays the time since the last configuration change.
LastVlanChange	Displays the time since the last VLAN change.
LastStatisticsReset	Displays the time since the statistics counters were last reset.
LastRunTimeConfigSave	Displays the last run-time configuration saved.
DefaultRuntimeConfigFileName	Displays the default Run-time configuration file directory name.
ConfigFileName	Specifies the name of a new configuration file.
ActionGroup1	Can be one of the following actions:
	resetCounters—resets all statistic counters
	<ul> <li>saveRuntimeConfig—saves the current run-time configuration</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>loadLicense—Loads a software license file to enable features</li> </ul>
ActionGroup2	Specifies the following action:
	resetIstStatCounters—Resets the IST statistic counters

Name	Description
ActionGroup3	Can be the following action:
	<ul> <li>flushIpRouteTbl—flushes IP routes from the routing table</li> </ul>
ActionGroup4	Can be the following action:
	<ul> <li>softReset—resets the device without running power-on tests</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>resetConsole—resets the switch console</li> </ul>
Result	Displays a message after you click <b>Apply</b> .

## **Editing chassis information**

#### About this task

Edit the chassis information to make changes to chassis-wide settings.

### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Chassis** tab.
- 5. Edit the necessary options.
- 6. Click Apply.

## **Chassis field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Chassis tab.

Name	Description
Туре	Specifies the chassis type.
SerialNumber	Specifies a unique chassis serial number.
HardwareRevision	Specifies the current hardware revision of the device chassis.
NumSlots	Specifies the number of slots available in the chassis:
	VSP 7200 Series 2 slots
	• VSP 8200: 1 slot
	• VSP 8400: 4 slots
NumPorts	Specifies the number of ports currently installed in the chassis.
BaseMacAddr	Specifies the starting point of the block of MAC addresses used by the switch for logical and physical interfaces.

Name	Description	
MacAddrCapacity	Specifies the number of routable MAC addresses based on the BaseMacAddr.	
AutoRecoverDelay	Specifies the time interval, in seconds, after which auto- recovery runs on ports to clear actions taken by CP Limit or link flap. The default is 30.	
MTUSize	Configures the maximum transmission unit size. The default is 1950.	
MgidUsageVlanCurrent	Number of MGIDs for VLANs currently in use.	
MgidUsageVlanRemaining	Number of remaining MGIDs for VLANs.	
MgidUsageMulticastCurrent	Number of MGIDs for multicast currently in use.	
MgidUsageMulticastRemaining	Number of remaining MGIDs for multicast.	
DdmMonitor	Enables or disables the monitoring of the DDM. When enabled, the user gets the internal performance condition (temperature, voltage, bias, Tx power and Rx power) of the SFP/XFP. The default is disable.	
DdmMonitorInterval	Configures the DDM monitor interval in the range of 5 to 60 in seconds. If any alarm occurs, the user gets the log message before the specific interval configured by the user. The default value is 5 seconds.	
DdmTrapSend	Enables or disables the sending of trap messages. When enabled, the trap message is sent to the Device manager, any time the alarm occurs. The default is enable.	
DdmAlarmPortdown	Sets the port down when an alarm occurs. When enabled, the port goes down when any alarm occurs. The default is disable.	
PowerUsage	Specifies the amount of power the CPU uses.	
PowerAvailable	Specifies the amount of power available to the CPU.	

# **Configuring system flags**

### About this task

Configure the system flags to enable or disable flags for specific configuration settings.

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click Chassis.
- 3. Click the System Flags tab.
- 4. Select the system flags you want to activate.
- 5. Clear the system flags you want to deactivate.
- 6. Click Apply.

### Important:

After you change certain configuration parameters, you must save the changes to the configuration file.

## System Flags field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the System Flags tab.

Name	Description
EnableAccessPolicy	Activates access policies. The default is disabled.
ForceTrapSender	Configures circuitless IP as a trap originator. The default is disabled.
ForcelpHdrSender	If you enable Force IP Header Sender, the system matches the IP header source address with SNMP header sender networks. The default is disabled.
AuthSuccessTrapEnable	Enable the trap send for login authentication success
ForceTopologyIpFlagEnable	Activates or disables the flag that configures the CLIP ID as the topology IP. Values are true or false.
	The default is disabled.
CircuitlessIpId	Uses the CLIP ID as the topology IP.
	Enter a value from 1–256.

# **Configuring channelization**

#### About this task

Use this procedure to enable or disable channelization on a 40 Gbps port. Channelization configures the port to operate as four 10 Gbps Ethernet ports.

#### 😵 Note:

Enabling or disabling channelization resets the port QoS configuration to default values. For information about configuring QoS values, see *Configuring QoS and ACL-Based Traffic Filtering on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-502.* 

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select a 40Gbps port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Port**.
- 3. Click General.
- 4. Click the Channelization tab.
- 5. To enable channelization on the port, select the **enable** button.
- 6. Click the **Apply** button. Alternatively, you can right-click on the port on the physical view, and select **Channelization Enable**.

- 7. To disable channelization on a port, select the first sub-port for the corresponding port: slot/ port/1.
- 8. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Port**.
- 9. Click General.
- 10. Click the **Channelization** tab.
- 11. To disable channelization on the port, select the **disable** button. This action will disable the four sub-ports.
- 12. Click the **Apply** button. Alternatively, you can right-click on the port on the physical view, and select **Channelization Disable**.

## Channelization field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **Channelization** tab.

Name	Description
Channelization	This field determines whether channelization is enabled or disabled on the selected port. The two options are <b>enable</b> and <b>disable</b> . The default is <b>disable</b> .

## **Configuring basic port parameters**

#### About this task

Configure options for a basic port configuration.

When you use 1 Gigabit Ethernet SFP transceivers on VSP 7254XSQ, the software disables autonegotiation on the port:

- If you use 1 Gbps fiber SFP transceivers, the remote end must also have auto-negotiation disabled.
- If you use 1 Gbps copper SFP transceivers, the remote end must have auto-negotiation enabled. If not, the link will not be established.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select a port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Port**.
- 3. Click General.
- 4. Click the Interface tab.
- 5. Configure the fields as required.

The 10/100BASE-TX ports do not consistently autonegotiate with older 10/100BASE-TX equipment. You can sometimes upgrade the older devices with new firmware or driver revisions. If an upgrade does not allow autonegotiation to correctly identify the link speed

and duplex settings, you can manually configure the settings for the link in question. Check the Avaya Web site for the latest compatibility information.

6. Click Apply.

## Interface field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the Interface tab.

Name	Description
Index	Displays the index of the port, written in the slot/port[/ sub-port] format.
Name	Configures the name of the port.
Descr	Displays the description of the port. A textual string containing information about the interface.
Туре	Displays the type of connector plugged in the port.
Mtu	Displays the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) for the port. The size of the largest datagram which can be sent or received on the interface, specified in octets. For interfaces that are used for transmitting network datagrams, this is the size of the largest network datagram that can be sent on the interface.
PhysAddress	Displays the physical address of the port. The address of the interface at the protocol layer immediately `below' the network layer in the protocol stack. For interfaces which do not have such an address (e.g., a serial line), this object should contain an octet string of zero length.
VendorDescr	Displays the vendor of the connector plugged in the port. This option is only applicable to ports 1/47 to 1/50.
DisplayFormat	Identifies the slot and port numbers (slot/port). If the port is channelized, the format also includes the subport in the format slot/port/sub-port
AdminStatus	Configures the port as enabled (up) or disabled (down) or testing. The testing state indicates that no operational packets can be passed.
OperStatus	Displays the current status of the port. The status includes enabled (up) or disabled (down) or testing. The testing state indicates that no operational packets can be passed.
ShutdownReason	Indicates the reason for a port state change.
LastChange	Displays the timestamp of the last change.
LinkTrap	Enable or disable link trapping.
AutoNegotiate	Enables or disables Autonegotiation for this port.

Name	Description
	The default is enabled for VSP 8000 Series but disabled for VSP 7200 Series.
	😢 Note:
	The 10 GigabitEthernet fiber-based ports can operate at either 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps) or 10 Gbps, dependent upon the capabilities of the optical transceiver that you install.
	This presents an ambiguity with respect to the autonegotiation settings of the port, while 1 Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) ports require autonegotiation; autonegotiation is not defined and is non-existent for 10 GbE ports.
	For a 10GbE fiber-based port, you have the capability to swap back-and-forth between 1 GbE and 10 GbE operation by simply swapping transceivers. To help with this transition between 1 GbE and 10 GbE port operation, Avaya allows you to configure autonegotiation when you install a 10 GbE transceiver, even though autonegotiation is not defined for 10GbE.
	You can do this in anticipation of a port changeover from 10 GbE to 1 GbE. In this manner, you could essentially preconfigure a port in 1 GbE mode while the 10 GbE transceiver is still installed. The port is ready to go upon the changeover to the 1 GbE transceiver.
	In addition, you can use a saved configuration file with autonegotiation enabled to boot a system with either 10 GbE or 1 GbE transceivers installed. If you install a 1 GbE transceiver, the system applies autonegotiation. If you install a 10 GbE transceiver, the system does not remove the autonegotiation settings from the configuration, but the system simply ignores the configuration because autonegotiation settings are irrelevant to a 10 GbE transceiver. The system preserves the saved configuration for autonegotiation when resaved no matter which speed of transceiver you install.
AutoNegAd	Specifies the port speed and duplex abilities to be advertised during link negotiation.
	Table continues.

Name	Description
	Note that the 8424XT ESM does not support the following speeds: 10-full, 10-half, and 1000-half.
AdminDuplex	Configures the administrative duplex setting for the port.
	The switch does not support half duplex.
OperDuplex	Indicates the operational duplex setting for the port.
	The switch does not support half duplex.
AdminSpeed	Configures the administrative speed for the port.
OperSpeed	Indicates the operational speed for the port.
QoSLevel	Selects the Quality of Service (QoS) level for this port. The default is level1.
DiffServ	Enables the Differentiated Service feature for this port. The default is disabled.
Layer3Trust	Configures if the system should trust Layer 3 packets coming from access links or core links only. The default is core.
Layer2Override8021p	Specifies whether Layer 2 802.1p override is enabled (selected) or disabled (cleared) on the port. The default is disabled (clear).
Mitid	Shows the MLT ID associated with this port. The default is 0.
Locked	Shows if the port is locked. The default is disabled.
UnknownMacDiscard	Discards packets that have an unknown source MAC address, and prevents other ports from sending packets with that same MAC address as the destination MAC address. The default is disabled.
DirectBroadcastEnable	Specifies if this interface forwards direct broadcast traffic.
OperRouting	Shows the routing status of the port.
HighSecureEnable	Enables or disables the high secure feature for this port.
RmonEnable	Enables or disables Remote Monitoring (RMON) on the interface. The default is disabled.
IpsecEnable	Enables or disables IP security (IPsec) on the interface. The default is disabled.
IngressRateLimit	Limits the traffic rate accepted by the specified ingress port.
EgressRateLimitState	Enables or disables egress port-based shaping to bind the maximum rate at which traffic leaves the port. The default is disabled.

Name	Description
EgressRateLimit	Configures the egress rate limit in Kb/s. VSP supports the range 1000 to 40000000. If configured to 0, it means this option is disabled.
Action	Performs one of the following actions on the port
	<ul> <li>none - none of the following actions</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>flushMacFdb - flush the MAC forwarding table</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>flushArp - flush the ARP table</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>flushIp - flush the IP route table</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>flushAll - flush all tables</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>triggerRipUpdate — manually triggers a RIP update</li> </ul>
	The default is none.
Result	Displays result of the selected action. The default is none.

# Viewing the boot configuration

### About this task

View the boot configuration to determine the software version, as well as view the source from which the switch last started.

#### Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Boot Config** tab.

### **Boot field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Boot Config** tab.

Name	Description
SwVersion	Specifies the software version that currently runs on the chassis.
LastRuntimeConfigSource	Specifies the last source for the run-time image.
PrimaryConfigSource	Specifies the primary configuration source.
PrimaryBackupConfigSource	Specifies the backup configuration source to use if the primary does not exist.

Name	Description
EnableFactoryDefaults	Specifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.
EnableDebugMode	Enabling the debugmode will provide the opportunity to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
EnableRebootOnError	Activates or disables automatic reboot on a fatal error. The default value is activated.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
EnableTelnetServer	Activates or disables the Telnet server service. The default is disabled.
EnableRloginServer	Activates or disables the rlogin and rsh server. The default value is disabled.
EnableFtpServer	Activates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the TFTPD flag is disabled.
EnableTftpServer	Activates or disables Trivial File Transfer Protocol server service. The default value is disabled.
EnableSshServer	Activates or disables the SSH server service. The default value is enabled.
EnableSpbmConfigMode	Enables you to configure SPB and IS-IS, but you cannot configure PIM and IGMP either globally or on an interface.
	The boot flag is enabled by default.
Enablelpv6Mode	Enable this flag to support IPv6 routes with prefix- lengths greater than 64 bits. This flag is disabled by default.
EnableEnhancedsecureMode	Enables or disables enhanced secure mode. The default is disabled.

# **Configuring boot flags**

### About this task

Change the boot configuration to determine the services available after the system starts.

File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) and Telnet server support IPv4 addresses.

### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Chassis**.
- 2. Click the Boot Config tab.
- 3. Select the services you want to enable.
- 4. Click Apply.

## **Boot field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Boot Config** tab.

Name	Description
SwVersion	Specifies the software version that currently runs on the chassis.
LastRuntimeConfigSource	Specifies the last source for the run-time image.
PrimaryConfigSource	Specifies the primary configuration source.
PrimaryBackupConfigSource	Specifies the backup configuration source to use if the primary does not exist.
EnableFactoryDefaults	Specifies whether the switch uses the factory default settings at startup. The default value is disabled. This flag is automatically reset to the default setting after the CPU restarts. If you change this parameter, you must restart the switch.
EnableDebugMode	Enabling the debugmode will provide the opportunity to allow user to enable TRACE on any port by prompting the selection on the console during boot up. This allows the user start trace for debugging earlier on specified port. It only works on console connection. By default, it is disabled.
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
EnableRebootOnError	Activates or disables automatic reboot on a fatal error. The default value is activated.

Name	Description
	Important:
	Do not change this parameter unless directed by Avaya.
EnableTelnetServer	Activates or disables the Telnet server service. The default is disabled.
EnableRloginServer	Activates or disables the rlogin and rsh server. The default value is disabled.
EnableFtpServer	Activates or disables the FTP server on the switch. The default value is disabled. To enable FTP, ensure that the TFTPD flag is disabled.
EnableTftpServer	Activates or disables Trivial File Transfer Protocol server service. The default value is disabled.
EnableSshServer	Activates or disables the SSH server service. The default value is enabled.
EnableSpbmConfigMode	Enables you to configure SPB and IS-IS, but you cannot configure PIM and IGMP either globally or on an interface.
	The boot flag is enabled by default.
Enablelpv6Mode	Enable this flag to support IPv6 routes with prefix- lengths greater than 64 bits. This flag is disabled by default.
EnableEnhancedsecureMode	Enables or disables enhanced secure mode. The default is disabled.

# **Enabling Jumbo frames**

### About this task

Enable Jumbo frames to increase the size of Ethernet frames supported on the chassis.

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Chassis** tab.
- 5. In MTU size, select either 1950, 9600 or 1522.
- 6. Click Apply.

# Configuring the date and time

### About this task

Configure the date and time to correctly identify when events occur on the system.

### Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the User Set Time tab.
- 5. Type and select the correct details.
- 6. Click Apply.

#### 😵 Note:

According to a bill passed by the government of Russia, from October 2014 Moscow has moved from current UTC+4 into UTC+3 time zone with no daylight savings.

## **User Set Time field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the User Set Time tab.

Name	Description
Year	Configures the year (integer 1998–2097). The default is 1998.
Month	Configures the month. The default is 1.
Date	Configures the day (integer 1–31). The default is 1.
Hour	Configures the hour (12am–11pm). The default is 0.
Minute	Configures the minute (integer 0–59). The default is 0.
Second	Configures the second (integer 0–59). The default is 0.
Time Zone	Configures the time zone.

## Associating a port to a VRF instance

#### About this task

Associate a port to a Virtual Router Forwarding (VRF) instance so that the port becomes a member of the VRF instance.

You can assign a VRF instance to a port after you configure the VRF. The system assigns ports to the GlobalRouter, VRF 0, by default.

### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select a port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Port**.
- 3. Click General.
- 4. Click the VRF tab.
- 5. To the right of the **BrouterVrfld** box, click the ellipsis (...) button.
- 6. In the BrouterVrfld dialog box, select the required VRF.
- 7. Click OK.
- 8. Click Apply.

# **Configuring CP Limit**

Configure CP Limit functionality to protect the switch from becoming congested by an excess of data flowing through one or more ports.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select a port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: Configuration > Edit > Port.
- 3. Click General.
- 4. Click the CP Limit tab.
- 5. Select the AutoRecoverPort check box.
- 6. Click Apply.

## **CP Limit field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the CP Limit tab.

Name	Description
	Activates or disables auto recovery of the port from action taken by CP Limit or link flap features. The default value is disabled.

## Configuring an IP address for the management port

Configure an IP address for the management port so that you can remotely access the device using the out-of-band (OOB) management port. The management port runs on a dedicated VRF.

The configured IP subnet has to be globally unique because the management protocols can go through in-band (Global Router) or out-of-band ports (Management VRF).

### Before you begin

- You must make a direct connection through the console port to configure a new IP address. If you connect remotely, you can view or delete the existing IP address configuration. If you delete the IP address remotely, you lose the EDM connection to the device.
- Do not configure a default route in the Management VRF.
- If you want out-of-band management, Avaya recommends that you define a specific static route in the Management Router VRF to the IP subnet where your management application resides.
- If you initiate an FTP session from a client device behind a firewall, you should set FTP to passive mode.
- The switch gives priority to out-of-band management when there is reachability from both inband and out-of-band. To avoid a potential conflict, do not configure any overlapping between in-band and out-of-band networks.

#### About this task

Configure an IP address for the management port so that you can remotely access the device using the out-of-band (OOB) management port. The management port runs on a dedicated VRF and Avaya recommends that you redirect all commands that are run on the management port to its VRF.

The configured IP subnet has to be globally unique because the management protocols can go through in-band or out-of-band ports.

#### 😵 Note:

Avaya recommends that you do not configure a default route in the Management VRF and instead use a static route. Inbound FTP does not work when a default route is configured at the Management VRF.

When you initiate FTP, you should also set FTP to passive mode.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > VRF Context View**.
- 2. Click Set VRF Context View.
- 3. Select MgmtRouter, VRF 512.
- 4. Click Launch VRF Context View.

A new EDM webpage appears for the VRF context. Parameters that you cannot configure for this context appear dim.

- 5. In the Device Physical view, select the management port.
- 6. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 7. Click Mgmt Port.
- 8. Click the IP Address tab.
- 9. Click Insert.
- 10. Configure the IP address and mask.
- 11. Click Insert.

12. Collapse the VRF context view.

## **IP Address field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **IP Address** tab.

Name	Description
Interface	Specifies the slot and port for the management port.
Ip Address	Specifies the IP address for the management port.
Net Mask	Specifies the subnet mask for the IP address.
BcastAddrFormat	Specifies the broadcast address format for the management port.
ReasmMaxSize	Specifies the size of the largest IP datagram that can be reassembled from IP fragmented datagrams received on the management port.
Vlanld	Specifies the VLAN ID to which the management port belongs.
	Specifies the VLAN ID in the range of 1 to 4059. VLAN IDs 1 to 4059 are configurable. The system reserves VLAN IDs 4060 to 4094 for internal use. VLAN ID 1 is the default VLAN and you cannot create or delete VLAN ID 1.
BrouterPort	Specifies if the management port is a brouter port rather than a routeable VLAN. You cannot change this value after the row is created.
MacOffset	Translates the IP address into a MAC address.

# Editing the management port parameters

#### About this task

The management port on the CP module is a 10/100/1000 Mb/s Ethernet port that you can use for an out-of-band management connection to the switch.

If you use EDM to configure the static routes of the management port, you do not receive a warning if you configure a non-natural mask. After you save the changes, the system deletes those static routes after the next restart, possibly causing the loss of IP connectivity to the management port.

If you are uncertain whether the mask you configure is non-natural, use ACLI to configure static routes.

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the management port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Mgmt Port.

- 4. Click the **General tab**.
- 5. Modify the appropriate settings.
- 6. Click Apply.

## **General field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the General tab.

Name	Description
Index	Specifies the slot and port number of the management port.
AdminStatus	Configures the administrative status of the device as up (ready to pass packets) or down. The testing state indicates that no operational packets can be passed.
OperStatus	Specifies the operational status of the device.
Mtu	Shows the configuration for the maximum transmission unit. The size of the largest packet which can be sent/received on the interface, specified in octets. For interfaces that are used for transmitting network datagrams, this is the size of the largest network datagram that can be sent on the interface.
LinkTrap	Enables or disables traps for the link status.
PhysAddress	Shows the MAC address.
AutoNegotiate	Enables or disables autonegotiate.
	🛪 Note:
	The 10 GigabitEthernet fiber-based I/O module ports can operate at either 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps) or 10 Gbps, dependent upon the capabilities optical transceiver that you install.
	This presents an ambiguity with respect to the autonegotiation settings of the port, while 1 Gigabit Ethernet (GbE) ports require autonegotiation; autonegotiation is not defined and is non-existent for 10 GbE ports.
	For a 10GbE fiber-based I/O module, you have the capability to swap back-and-forth between 1 GbE and 10 GbE operation by simply swapping transceivers. To help with this transition between 1 GbE and 10 GbE port operation, Avaya allows you to configure autonegotiation when you install a 10 GbE transceiver, even though autonegotiation is not defined for 10GbE.
	You can do this in anticipation of a port changeover from 10 GbE to 1 GbE. In this manner, you could essentially preconfigure a port in 1 GbE mode while the 10 GbE transceiver is still installed. The port is ready to go upon the changeover to the 1 GbE transceiver.
	In addition, you can use a saved configuration file with autonegotiation enabled to boot a system with either 10 GbE or 1 GbE transceivers installed. If you install a 1 GbE transceiver, the system applies

Name	Description
	autonegotiation. If you install a 10 GbE transceiver, the system does not remove the autonegotiation settings from the configuration, but the system simply ignores the configuration because autonegotiation settings are irrelevant to a 10 GbE transceiver. The system preserves the saved configuration for autonegotiation when resaved no matter which speed of transceiver you install.
AdminDuplex	Specifies the administrative duplex mode for the management port. The default is full.
OperDuplex	Specifies the operational duplex configuration for this port.
AdminSpeed	Specifies the administrative speed for this port. The default is 100 Mb/s.
OperSpeed	Shows the current operating data rate of the port.

# Configuring the management port IPv6 interface parameters

### About this task

Configure IPv6 management port parameters to use IPv6 routing on the port.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the management port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Mgmt Port.
- 4. Click the IPv6 Interface tab.
- 5. Click Insert.
- 6. Edit the fields as required.
- 7. Click Insert.
- 8. Click Apply.

## IPv6 Interface field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the IPv6 Interface tab.

Name	Description
Interface	Identifies the unique IPv6 interface.
Descr	Specifies a textual string containing information about the interface. The network management system also configures the <b>Descr</b> string.
Туре	Specifies the type of interface.

Name	Description
ReasmMaxSize(MTU)	Configures the MTU for this IPv6 interface. This value must be the same for all the IP addresses defined on this interface. The default value is 1500.
PhysAddress	Specifies the physical address for the interface. For example, for an IPv6 interface attached to an 802.x link, this value is a MAC address.
AdminStatus	Configures the indication of whether IPv6 is activated (up) or disabled (down) on this interface. This object does not affect the state of the interface, only the interface connection to an IPv6 stack. The default is false (cleared).
ReachableTime	Configures the time, in milliseconds, that the system considers a neighbor reachable after it receives a reachability confirmation. The value is in a range from 0–3600000. The default value is 30000.
RetransmitTimer	Configures the time between retransmissions of neighbor solicitation messages to a neighbor; during address resolution or neighbor reachability discovery. The value is expressed in milliseconds in a range from 0–3600000. The default value is 1000.
CurHopLimit	Specifies the current hop limit field sent in router advertisements from this interface. The value must be the current diameter of the Internet. A value of zero indicates that the advertisement does not specify a value for the current hop limit. The default is 64.

# Configuring management port IPv6 addresses

### About this task

Configure management port IPv6 addresses to add or remove IPv6 addresses from the port.

Avaya supports IPv6 addressing with Ping, Telnet, and SNMP.

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the management port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Mgmt Port.
- 4. Click the IPv6 Addresses tab.
- 5. Click Insert.
- 6. In the Addr box, type the required IPv6 address for the management port.
- 7. In the AddrLen box, type the number of bits from the IPv6 address you want to advertise.
- 8. Click Insert.
- 9. Click Apply.

## **IPv6 Addresses field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the IPv6 Addresses tab.

Name	Description
Interface	Specifies an index value that uniquely identifies the interface.
Addr	Specifies the IPv6 address to which this entry addressing information pertains.
	If the IPv6 address exceeds 116 octets, the object identifiers (OIDS) of instances of columns in this row is more than 128 subidentifiers and you cannot use SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, or SNMPv3 to access them.
AddrLen	Specifies the prefix length value for this address. You cannot change the address length after creation. You must provide this field to create an entry in this table.
Туре	Specifies unicast, the only supported type.
Origin	Specifies the origin of the address. The origin of the address can be one of the following: other, manual, dhcp, linklayer, or random.
Status	Specifies the status of the address, describing if the address can be used for communication. The status can be one of the following: preferred, deprecated, invalid, inaccessible, unknown, tentative, or duplicate.
Created	Specifies the time this entry was created. If this entry was created prior to the last initialization of the local network management subsystem, then this option contains a zero value.
LastChanged	Specifies the time this entry was last updated. If this entry was updated prior to the last initialization of the local network management subsystem, then this option contains a zero value.

# Auto reactivating the port of the SLPP shutdown

#### About this task

Use the following procedure to auto reactivate the port which is shut down by the SLPP.

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select a port.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: Configuration > Edit > Port.
- 3. Click General.
- 4. Click the CP Limit tab.
- 5. Select **AutoRecoverPort** to activate auto recovery of the port from the action taken by SLPP shutdown features. The default value is disabled.
- 6. Click Apply.

# Editing serial port parameters

### About this task

Perform this procedure to specify serial port communication settings. The serial port on the device is the console port (10101).

### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the console port (10101) on the device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Serial Port.
- 4. Edit the port parameters as required.

## **Serial Port field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Serial Port tab.

Name	Description
lfIndex	Specifies the slot and port number for the serial port.
BaudRate	Specifies the baud rate of this port. The default is 9600.
DataBits	Specifies the number of data bits, for each byte of data, this port sends and receives. The default is 7.

# **Enabling port lock**

#### About this task

Use the port lock feature to administratively lock a port or ports to prevent other users from changing port parameters or modifying port action. You cannot modify locked ports until you first unlock the port.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Security > Control Path**.
- 2. Click General.
- 3. Click the **Port Lock** tab.
- 4. To enable port lock, select the **Enable** check box.
- 5. Click Apply.

## Port Lock field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **Port Lock** tab.

Name	Description
Enable	Activates the port lock feature. Clear this check box to unlock ports. The default is disabled.
LockedPorts	Lists the locked ports. Click the ellipsis () button to select the ports you want to lock or unlock.

# Locking a port

#### Before you begin

• You must enable port lock before you lock or unlock a port.

#### About this task

Use the port lock feature to administratively lock a port or ports to prevent other users from changing port parameters or modifying port action. You cannot modify locked ports until you first unlock the port.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: Configuration > Security > Control Path.
- 2. Click General.
- 3. Click the **Port Lock** tab.
- 4. In the LockedPorts box, click the ellipsis (...) button.
- 5. Click the desired port or ports.
- 6. Click **Ok**.
- 7. In the Port Lock tab, click **Apply**.

## Port Lock field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **Port Lock** tab.

Name	Description
Enable	Activates the port lock feature. Clear this check box to unlock ports. The default is disabled.
LockedPorts	Lists the locked ports. Click the ellipsis () button to select the ports you want to lock or unlock.

## Viewing power information

#### About this task

View power information to see the amount of power available and used by the chassis and all components.

### Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Power Info** tab.

## **Power Info field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Power Info** tab.

Name	Description
TotalPower	Shows the total power for the chassis.
RedundantPower	Shows the redundant power for the chassis.
PowerUsage	Shows the power currently used by the complete chassis.
PowerAvailable	Shows the unused power.

## Viewing power status on VSP 8400

Perform this procedure to view the power status for the chassis and cards.

#### Procedure

- 1. For VSP 8400 only, in the navigation tree, expand the following folders: **Configuration** > **Edit**.
- 2. Click Chassis.
- 3. Click the **Power Consumption** tab.

## Power consumption field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the **Power Consumption** tab.

Name	Description	
Index	Displays an index value that identifies the component.	
PowerStatus	Displays the power status.	
SlotDescription	Displays the slot number.	
CardDescription	Identifies the chassis or type of card.	

# Viewing fan information

### About this task

View fan information to monitor the alarm status of the cooling ports in the chassis.

#### Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Fan Info** tab.

### Fan Info field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the Fan Info tab.

Name	Description
ld	Specifies the fan ID.
Status	Specifies the operation status of the fan.
Туре	Specifies the running speed type of the fan.

## Viewing topology status information

#### About this task

View topology status information (which includes Avaya Management MIB status information) to view the configuration status of the SynOptics Network Management Protocol (SONMP) on the system.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Diagnostics**.
- 2. Click **Topology**.
- 3. Click the **Topology** tab.

## **Topology field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Topology** tab.

Name	Description
lpAddr	Specifies the IP address of the device.
Status	Indicates whether topology (SONMP) is on or off for the device.

Name	Description
NmmLstChg	Specifies the value of sysUpTime, the last time an entry in the network management MIB (NMM) topology table was added, deleted, or modified, if the table did not change since the last cold or warm start of the agent.
NmmMaxNum	Specifies the maximum number of entries in the NMM topology table.
NmmCurNum	Specifies the current number of entries in the NMM topology table.

# Viewing the topology message status

### About this task

View topology message status to view the interconnections between Layer 2 devices in a network.

### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Diagnostics**.
- 2. Click Topology.
- 3. Click the **Topology Table** tab.

## **Topology Table field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the	Topology Table tab.
--	---------------------

Slot Port SubPort IpAddr SegId (RemPort)	Specifies the slot number in the chassis that received the topology message.         Specifies the port that received the topology message.         Specifies the channel of a channelized 40 Gbps port that received the topology message.         Specifies the IP address of the sender of the topology message.         Specifies the segment identifier of the segment from which the remote
SubPort IpAddr	Specifies the channel of a channelized 40 Gbps port that received the topology message.         Specifies the IP address of the sender of the topology message.
lpAddr	topology message.         Specifies the IP address of the sender of the topology message.
•	
Sould (PomPort)	Specifies the segment identifier of the segment from which the remote
Segiu (Kenir Ott)	agent sent the topology message. This value is extracted from the message.
MacAddr	Specifies the MAC address of the sender of the topology message.
ChassisType	Specifies the chassis type of the device that sent the topology message.
BkplType	Specifies the backplane type of the device that sent the topology message. Avaya Virtual Services Platform uses a backplane type of 12.
LocalSeg	Indicates if the sender of the topology message is on the same Ethernet segment as the reporting agent.
CurState	Specifies the current state of the sender of the topology message. The choices are
	<ul> <li>topChanged—Topology information recently changed.</li> </ul>

Name	Description
	<ul> <li>heartbeat—Topology information is unchanged.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>new—The sending agent is in a new state.</li> </ul>

# Configuring a forced message control pattern

### About this task

Configure a forced message control pattern to enforce configured message control actions.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation pane, expand the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Chassis**.
- 2. Click the Force Msg Patterns tab.
- 3. Click Insert.
- 4. In the **PatternId** field, enter a pattern ID number.
- 5. In the **Pattern** field, enter a message control pattern.
- 6. Click Insert.

## Force Msg Patterns field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the Force Msg Patterns tab.

Name	Description
PatternId	Specifies a pattern identification number in the range 1–32.
Pattern	Specifies a forced message control pattern of 4 characters. The software and the hardware log messages that use the first four bytes matching one of the patterns in the force-msg table undergo the configured message control action. You can specify up to 32 different patterns in the force-msg table, including a wildcard pattern (****). If you specify the wildcard pattern, all messages undergo message control.

# **Chapter 8: Hardware status using EDM**

This section provides methods to check the status of basic hardware in the chassis using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

## **Configuring polling intervals**

#### About this task

Enable and configure polling intervals to determine how frequently EDM polls for port and LED status changes or detects the hot swap of installed ports.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Device**.
- 2. Click Preference Setting.
- 3. Enable polling or hot swap detection.
- 4. Configure the frequency to poll the device.
- 5. Click Apply.

### **Preference Setting field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Preference Setting tab.

Name	Description
Enable	Enables polling for port and LED status changes. The default is disabled.
Poll Interval	Specifies the polling interval, if enabled. The default is 60 seconds.
Enable	Detects the hot swap of installed ports. The default is disabled.
Detection per Status Poll Intervals	Specifies the number of poll intervals for detection, if enabled. The default is 2 intervals.

## Viewing module information

View the administrative status for modules in the front of the chassis.

#### About this task

This procedure applies only to VSP 8400. VSP 8400 provides slots for four Ethernet Switch Modules (ESM).

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select an ESM.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: Configuration > Edit.
- 3. Click Card.
- 4. Click the Card tab.

### **Card field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Card tab.

Name	Description
CardType	Displays the model number of the module.
CardDescription	Shows a description of the installed module.
CardSerialNo	Shows the serial number for the installed module.
CardPartNo	Shows the part number.
CardAssemblyDate	Shows the date the module was assembled.
CardHWConfig	Shows the hardware revision.
AdminStatus	Changes the administrative status for the module.
OperStatus	Shows the operational status for the module.

## Viewing power supply parameters

Perform this procedure to view information about the operating status of the power supplies.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: Configuration > Edit.
- 2. Click Power Supply.

## **Detail field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Detail** tab.

Name	Description
Туре	Describes the type of power used—AC or DC.
Description	Provides a description of the power supply.
SerialNumber	Specifies the power supply serial number.
HardwareRevision	Specifies the hardware revision number.
PartNumber	Specifies the power supply part number.
PowerSupplyOperStatus	Specifies the status of the power supply as one of the following:
	• on (up)
	• off (down)
InputLineVoltage	Display the input line voltage:
	<ul> <li>low 110v—power supply connected to a 110 Volt source</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>high 220v—power supply connected to a 220 Volt source</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>ac110vOr220v—power supply connected to a 110 Volt or 220 Volt source</li> </ul>
	If the power supplies in a chassis are not of identical input line voltage values, the operating line voltage shows the low 110v value.
OutputWatts	Displays the output power of this power supply.

## Viewing temperature on the chassis

You can view information about the temperature on the chassis.

#### About this task

The system triggers an alarm when one of the zones exceeds the threshold temperature value, and clears the alarm after the zone temperature falls below the threshold value.

When an elevated temperature triggers a temperature alarm, the fan speed increases, and the LED color changes on the front panel of the switch.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the chassis.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: Configuration > Edit.
- 3. Click Chassis.

4. Click the **Temperature** tab.

## **Temperature field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Temperature** tab.

Name	Description
CpuTemperature	Current CPU temperature in Celsius.
MacTemperature	Current MAC component temperature in Celsius.
Phy1Temperature	Current PHY 1 component temperature in Celsius.
	This field does not apply to VSP 7254XSQ.
Phy2Temperature	Current PHY 2 component temperature in Celsius.
	This field does not apply to VSP 7254XSQ.
Mac2Temperature	Current MAC 2 component temperature in Celsius.

# **Chapter 9: Domain Name Service**

The following sections provide information on the Domain Name Service (DNS) implementation for the switch.

## **DNS** fundamentals

This section provides conceptual material on the Domain Name Service (DNS) implementation for the switch. Review this content before you make changes to the configurable DNS options.

#### **DNS** client

Every equipment interface connected to a Transmission Control Protocol over IP (TCP/IP) network is identified with a unique IPv4 or IPv6 address. You can assign a name to every machine that uses an IPv4 or IPv6 address. The TCP/IP does not require the usage of names, but these names make the task easier for network managers in the following ways:

- An IP client can contact a machine with its name, which is converted to an IP address, based on a mapping table. All applications that use this specific machine do not depend on the addressing scheme.
- It is easier to remember a name than a full IP address.

To establish the mapping between an IP name and an IPv4 or an IPv6 address you use the Domain Name Service (DNS). DNS is a hierarchical database that you can distribute on several servers for backup and load sharing. After you add a new hostname, update this database. The information is sent to all the different hosts. An IP client that resolves the mapping between the hostname and the IP address sends a request to one of the database servers to resolve the name.

After you establish the mapping of IP name and IP address, the application is modified to use a hostname instead of an IP address. The switch converts the hostname to an IP address.

If the entry to translate the hostname to IP address is not in the host file, the switch queries the configured DNS server for the mapping from hostname to IP address. You can configure connections for up to three different DNS servers—primary, secondary and tertiary. First the primary server is queried, and then the secondary, and finally the tertiary.

DNS modifies Ping, Telnet, and copy applications. You can enter a hostname or an IP address to invoke Ping, Telnet, and copy applications.

A log/debug report is generated for all the DNS requests sent to DNS servers and all successful DNS responses received from the DNS servers.

#### **IPv6 Support**

The Domain Name Service (DNS) used by the switch supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses with no difference in functionality or configuration.

## **DNS configuration using ACLI**

This section describes how to configure the Domain Name Service (DNS) client using Avaya command line interface (ACLI).

DNS supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

### **Configuring the DNS client**

#### About this task

Configure the Domain Name Service to establish the mapping between an IP name and an IPv4 or IPv6 address. DNS supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses with no difference in

functionality or configuration using ACLI.

You can configure connection for up to three different DNS servers—primary, secondary and tertiary. First the primary server is queried, and then the secondary, and finally the tertiary.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

- 2. Configure the DNS client:
  - ip domain-name WORD<0-255>
- 3. Optionally, add addresses for additional DNS servers:
  - ip name-server <primary|secondary|tertiary> WORD<0-46>
- 4. View the DNS client system status:

show ip dns

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

Switch:1# configure terminal

Add addresses for additional DNS servers:

Switch:1(config) # ip name-server tertiary 254.104.201.141

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ip domain-name command.

#### Table 30: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<0-255>	Configures the default domain name.
	WORD<0–255> is a string 0–255 characters.

Use the data in the following table to use the ip name-server command.

#### Table 31: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
primary secondary tertiary WORD<0-46>	Configures the primary, secondary, or tertiary DNS server address. Enter the IP address in a.b.c.d format for IPv4 or hexadecimal format (string length 0–46) for IPv6. You can specify the IP address for only one server at a time; you cannot specify all three servers in one command. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ip name-server <primary secondary tertiatry></primary secondary tertiatry>

### **Querying the DNS host**

#### About this task

Query the DNS host for information about host addresses.

You can enter either a hostname, an IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you enter the hostname, this command shows the IP address that corresponds to the hostname and if you enter an IP address, this command shows the hostname for the IP address. DNS supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses with no difference in functionality or configuration using ACLI.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

2. View the host information:

```
show hosts WORD<0-256>
```

#### Example

```
Switch:1> enable
```

Switch:1# configure terminal

#### View the host information:

Switch:1(config) # show hosts 10.10.10.1

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the show hosts command.

#### Table 32: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<0-256>	Specifies one of the following:
	<ul> <li>the name of the host DNS server as a string of 0– 256 characters.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>the IP address of the host DNS server in a.b.c.d format.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>The IPv6 address of the host DNS server in hexadecimal format (string length 0–46).</li> </ul>

## **DNS configuration using EDM**

This section describes how to configure the Domain Name Service (DNS) using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

DNS supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses with no difference in functionality or configuration except for the following. Under the **DNS Servers** tab, in the **DnsServerListAddressType** box, you must select **ipv4** or **ipv6**.

### **Configuring the DNS client**

#### About this task

You can configure connections for up to three different DNS servers—primary, secondary and tertiary. First the primary server is queried, and then the secondary, and finally the tertiary.

DNS supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. Under the **DNS Servers** tab, in the **DnsServerListAddressType** box, you must select **ipv4** or **ipv6**.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Diagnostics**.
- 2. Click DNS.
- 3. Click the **DNS Servers** tab.
- 4. Click Insert.
- 5. In the **DnsServerListType** box, select the DNS server type.

- 6. In the **DnsServerListAddressType** box, select the IP version.
- 7. In the DnsServerListAddress box, enter the DNS server IP address.
- 8. Click Insert.

#### **DNS Servers field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **DNS Servers** tab.

Name	Description
DnsServerListType	Configures the DNS server as primary, secondary, or tertiary.
DnsServerListAddressType	Configures the DNS server address type as IPv4 or IPv6.
DnsServerListAddress	Specifies the DNS server address.
DnsServerListStatus	Specifies the status of the DNS server.
DnsServerListRequestCount	Specifies the number of requests sent to the DNS server.
DnsServerListSuccessCount	Specifies the number of successful requests sent to the DNS
	server.

## Querying the DNS host

#### About this task

Query the DNS host for information about host addresses.

You can enter either a hostname or an IPv4 or IPv6 address. If you enter the hostname, this command shows the IP address that corresponds to the hostname and if you enter an IP address, this command shows the hostname for the IP address. DNS supports IPv4 addresses with no difference in functionality or configuration in this procedure.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit > Diagnostics**.
- 2. Click DNS.
- 3. Click the **DNS Host** tab.
- 4. In the HostData text box, enter the DNS host name, IPv4 or the IPv6 address.
- 5. Click Query.

#### **DNS Host field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **DNS Host** tab.

Name	Description
HostData	Enter hostname or host IPv4 or IPv6 address to be identified.
HostName	Identifies the host name. This variable is a read-only field.

Table continues...

Name	Description
HostAddressType	Identifies the address type of the host.
HostAddress	Identifies the host IP address. This variable is a read-only field.
HostSource	Identifies the DNS server IP or host file. This variable is a read-only field.

# **Chapter 10: Licensing**

The following sections provide information on the Licensing features, activation, and installation on the switch.

## Licensing fundamentals

This section provides conceptual information about feature licensing for the switch. Review this section before you make changes to the license configuration.

### **Feature licensing**

This product uses the Product Licensing and Delivery System (PLDS) as the license order, delivery and management tool. PLDS provides self-service license activations, upgrades, moves or changes.

The switch supports a Premier License for Layer 3 VSNs and MACsec features. There are two types of Premier Licenses:

- Support for Layer 3 VSNs only
- Support for Layer 3 VSNs and MACsec

All other features are not licensed.

For customers that would like to trial premier features prior to purchasing a Premier License, there are two types of PLDS Premier trial licenses that will permit use of premier features for a 60 day period:

- Support for Layer 3 VSNs only
- Support for Layer 3 VSNs and MACsec

The PLDS Premier Trial License is generated using the system MAC address of a switch and can only be generated and used once for a given MAC address. After the expiry of the 60 day trial period, you will see messages on the console and in the alarms database that the license has expired. If you restart the system after the license expiration, the Premier features will not be loaded even if they are in the saved configuration. If you purchase a Premier License, you must obtain and install a license file. For more information about how to generate a license file, see *Getting Started with Avaya PLDS for Avaya Networking Products*, NN46199-300; All licensing activities are performed through the Avaya PLDS Portal at <a href="http://plds.avaya.com">http://plds.avaya.com</a>.

#### **Base License**

The Base License is included with the switch hardware and activates the features not included in the Premier License.

The Base License includes the following Layer 2 features:

- VLANs
- RSTP
- MSTP
- MLT
- IGMP
- 802.1AX Link Aggregation (LACP)
- 802.1ag
- SPB Core/Base (NNI)
- Layer 2 Virtual Service Networks (VSNs)
- Etree
- · Layer 2 Virtual Service Networks (VSN) with Multicast
- Virtualized Multicast over Fabric Connect\*

The Base License includes the following Layer 3/Routing features:

- Global Routing Table (GRT) IP Routing including IP-Shortcuts
- Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+)
- Service Level Agreement Monitor (SLA Mon<sup>™</sup>)
- Inter-ISID-Routing
- VRRP
- DHCP-Relay
- RIP in the GRT and VRF
- RIP in the GRT with IP Shortcuts
- OSPF in the GRT and VRF
- OSPF in the GRT with IP Shortcuts
- BGP in the GRT and VRF
- BGP in the GRT with IP Shortcuts
- · SPB in the GRT with IP Shortcuts
- Multicast using IP-Shortcuts
- GRT with IP Shortcuts
- Route Policy Virtualization in the GRT and the GRT with IP Shortcuts
- IP Multicast Routing parity with IGMP v1, v2, and v3
- IP VRF

- IPv6
- SMLT

#### **Premier License**

The Premier License activates the Layer 3 Virtualization features, that is the Layer 3 Virtual Service Networks in addition to the Base License.

#### Important:

Avaya recommends that you purchase the Premier License if you anticipate growth in your network.

You can install a Premier License on each chassis after you install the Base software license, and it is optional.

#### **Premier with MACsec License**

The Premier with MACsec License activates MACsec feature in addition to the Base License and Premier License features.

#### **Premier Trial License**

The switch provides a trial period of 60 days during which you have access to all features. In the trial period you can configure all features without restriction, including system console and log messages.

System console and log messages alert you to the expiry of the 60 day trial period. The message Licence trial period will expire in ## days appears every 24 hours.

At the end of the trial period, the following message appears: License trial period has expired. All the Premier features will be disabled. Please buy the license to enable them. This message is the last notification recorded.

The system logs the preceding messages even if you do not use or test license features during the trial period. If you load a valid license on the system, it does not record the preceding messages.

### License type and part numbers

The following table provides the part number for the various licenses supported on the switch.

#### Table 33: Supported licenses

Part number/ Order code	License type
380176	Premier license for one chassis
380177	Premier license with MACsec for one chassis
380178	Trial license
380179	Trial license with MACsec
380800	Premier to Premier license with MACsec

### **Feature license files**

After you obtain the license file to enable Premier License features, you must install the license file on the system to unlock the associated licensed features. You must load a license file on the internal flash of the device.

## License installation using ACLI

Install and manage a license file for the switch by using the Avaya command line interface (ACLI).

## Installing a license file

#### Before you begin

- You must enable the File Transfer Protocol (FTP) or Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) server depending on which protocol you use to download the license file to the device.
- Ensure that you have the correct license file with the base MAC address of the switch on which you need to install the license. Otherwise, the system does not unblock the licensed features.

#### About this task

Install a license file on the switch to enable licensed features.

#### 😵 Note:

You can enable FTP or TFTP in the boot config flags and then initiate an FTP or a TFTP session from your workstation to put the file on the server running on the switch.

#### Procedure

- 1. From a remote station, or PC, use FTP or TFTP to download the license file to the device, and store the license file in the /intflash directory.
- 2. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

3. To load the license file, execute the following command:

load-license

#### Important:

If the loading fails, or if the switch restarts and cannot locate a license file in the specified location, the switch cannot unlock the licensed features and reverts to base functionality.

#### Important:

The license filename stored on a device must meet the following requirements:

- · Maximum of 63 alphanumeric characters
- No spaces or special characters allowed
- Underscore (\_) is allowed
- · The file extension ".xml" is required

#### Example

Use FTP to transfer a license file from a PC to the internal flash on the device:

```
C:\Users\jsmith>ftp 192.0.2.16
Connected to 192.0.2.16 (192.0.2.16).
220 FTP server ready
Name (192.0.2.16: (none)): rwa
331 Password required
Password:
230 User logged in
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I, binary mode
ftp> put premier macsec.xml /intflash/premier macsec.xml
local: premier_macsec.xml remote: /intflash/premier_macsec.xml
227 Entering Passive Mode (192,0,2,16,4,2)
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection
226 Transfer complete
101 bytes sent in 2.7e-05 secs (3740.74 Kbytes/sec)
ftp>
```

Log in to the device and load the license. The following example shows a successful operation.

```
Switch:1(config)#load-license
Switch:1(config)#CP1 [06/12/15 15:59:57.636:UTC] 0x000005bc 00000000 GlobalRouter SW INFO
License Successfully Loaded From </intflash/premier_macsec.xml> License Type -- PREMIER
+MACSEC
```

The following example shows an unsuccessful operation.

```
Switch:1(config)#load-license
Switch:1(config)#CP1 [06/12/15 15:58:48.376:UTC] 0x000006b9 00000000 GlobalRouter SW
INFO Invalid license file /intflash/license_VSP_8000_example.xml HostId is not Valid
CP1 [06/12/15 15:58:48.379:UTC] 0x000005c4 00000000 GlobalRouter SW INFO No Valid
License found.
```

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to help you install a license with the copy command.

Variable	Value
<a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d>	Specifies the IPv4 and IPv6 address of the TFTP server from which to copy the license file.

Table continues...

Variable	Value
<file></file>	Specifies the name of the license file when copied to the flash. The destination file name must meet the following requirements:
	Maximum of 63 alphanumeric characters
	<ul> <li>No spaces or special characters allowed</li> </ul>
	Underscore (_) is allowed
	The file extension ".xml" is required
<srcfile></srcfile>	Specifies the name of the license file on the TFTP server. For example, license.lic or license.xml.

### Showing a license file

#### About this task

Display the existing software licenses on your device.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log on to the switch to enter User EXEC mode.
- 2. Show the existing software licenses on your device:

show license

#### Example

For no license:

For a Premier with MACsec license:

Switch:1>show license

```
License file name : /intflash/premier_macsec.xml
License Type : PREMIER+MACSEC
MD5 of Key : 00000000 00000000 00000000
MD5 of File : 00000000 00000000 00000000
Generation Time : 2015/2/26 11:09:53
Expiration Time :
Base Mac Addr : b0:ad:aa:46:f0:00
flags : 0x0000001 SINGLE
memo :
Features requiring a Premier license:
```

Layer 3 VSNsMACsec

## License installation using EDM

Install and manage a license file for the switch by using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

## Installing a license file

#### Before you begin

- You must store the license file on a file server.
- Ensure that you have the correct license file with the base MAC address of the switch on which you need to install the license. Otherwise, the system does not unblock the licensed features.

#### About this task

Install a license file on the switch to enable licensed features.

IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click File System.
- 3. Click the Copy File tab.
- 4. In the **Source** box, type the IP address of the file server where the license file is located and the name of the license file.
- 5. In the **Destination** box, type the flash device and the name of the license file.

The license file name must have a file extension of .xml.

- 6. Select start.
- 7. Click Apply.

The license file is copied to the flash of the device. The status of the file copy appears in the Result field.

- 8. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 9. Click Chassis.
- 10. Click the System tab.
- 11. In ActionGroup1, select loadLicense.
- 12. Click Apply.

#### Important:

If the loading fails, the switch cannot unlock the licensed features and reverts to base functionality.

- 13. On the System tab, in ActionGroup1, select saveRuntimeConfig.
- 14. Click Apply.
  - Important:

The license filename stored on a device must meet the following requirements:

- Maximum of 63 alphanumeric characters
- · No spaces or special characters allowed
- Underscore (\_) is allowed
- The file extension ".xml" is required

### **Copy File field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Copy File tab.

Name	Description
Source	Identifies the source file to copy. You must specify the full path and filename.
Destination	Identifies the device and the file name (optional) to which to copy the source file. You must specify the full path. Trace files are not a valid destination.
Action	Starts or stops the copy process.
Result	Specifies the result of the copy process:
	• none
	• inProgress
	• success
	• fail
	invalidSource
	<ul> <li>invalidDestination</li> </ul>
	outOfMemory
	• outOfSpace
	• fileNotFound

# **Chapter 11: Network Time Protocol**

The following sections provide information on the Network Time Protocol (NTP).

## **NTP** fundamentals

This section provides conceptual material on the Network Time Protocol (NTP). Review this content before you make changes to the NTP configuration

### **Overview**

The Network Time Protocol (NTP) synchronizes the internal clocks of various network devices across large, diverse networks to universal standard time. NTP runs over the User Datagram Protocol (UDP), which in turn runs over IP. The NTP specification is documented in Request For Comments (RFC) 1305.

Every network device relies on an internal system clock to maintain accurate time. On local devices, the internal system clock is usually set by eye or by wristwatch to within a minute or two of the actual time and is rarely reset at regular intervals. Many local clocks are battery-backed devices that use room temperature clock oscillators that can drift as much as several seconds each day. NTP automatically adjusts the time of the devices so that they synchronize within a millisecond (ms) on LANs and up to a few tens of milliseconds on WANs relative to Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

The current implementation of NTP supports only unicast client mode. In this mode, the NTP client sends NTP time requests to other remote time servers in an asynchronous fashion. The NTP client collects four samples of time from each remote time server. A clock selection algorithm determines the best server among the selected samples based on stratum, delay, dispersion and the last updated time of the remote server. The real time clock (RTC) is adjusted to the selected sample from the chosen server.

#### **NTP terms**

A *peer* is a device that runs NTP software. However, this implementation of NTP refers to peers as remote time servers that provide time information to other time servers on the network and to the local NTP client. An NTP client refers to the local network device, the switch, that accepts time information from other remote time servers.

## NTP system implementation model

NTP is based on a hierarchical model that consists of a local NTP client that runs on the switch and on remote time servers. The NTP client requests and receives time information from one or more remote time servers. The local NTP client reviews the time information from all available time servers and synchronizes its internal clock to the time server whose time is most accurate. The NTP client does not forward time information to other devices that run NTP.

Two types of time servers exist in the NTP model: primary time servers and secondary time servers. A primary time server is directly synchronized to a primary reference source, usually a wire or radio clock that is synchronized to a radio station that provides a standard time service. The primary time server is the authoritative time source in the hierarchy, meaning that it is the one true time source to which the other NTP devices in the subnet synchronize their internal clocks.

A secondary time server uses a primary time server or one or more secondary time servers to synchronize its time, forming a synchronization subnet. A synchronization subnet is a self-organizing, hierarchical master-backup configuration with the primary servers at the root and secondary servers of decreasing accuracy at successive levels.

The following figure shows NTP time servers forming a synchronization subnet.

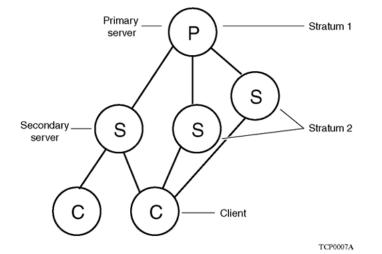


Figure 2: NTP time servers forming a synchronization subnet

In the NTP model, the synchronization subnet automatically reconfigures in a hierarchical primarysecondary configuration to produce accurate and reliable time, even if one or more primary time servers or the path between them fails. This feature applies in a case in which all the primary servers on a partitioned subnet fail, but one or more backup primary servers continue to operate. If all of the primary time servers in the subnet fail, the remaining secondary servers synchronize among themselves.

### Time distribution within a subnet

NTP distributes time through a hierarchy of primary and secondary servers, with each server adopting a stratum, see Figure 2: NTP time servers forming a synchronization subnet on page 128. A stratum defines how many NTP hops away a particular secondary time server is from an authoritative time source (primary time server) in the synchronization subnet. A stratum 1 time server is located at the top of the hierarchy and is directly attached to an external time source, typically a wire or radio clock; a stratum 2 time server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 1 time server; a stratum 3 time server receives its time through NTP from a stratum 2 time server, and so forth.

Each NTP client in the synchronization subnet chooses as its time source the server with the lowest stratum number with which it is configured to communicate through NTP. This strategy effectively builds a self-organizing tree of NTP speakers. The number of strata is limited to 15 to avoid long synchronization loops.

NTP avoids synchronizing to a remote time server with inaccurate time. NTP never synchronizes to a remote time server that is not itself synchronized. NTP compares the times reported by several remote time servers.

## **Synchronization**

Unlike other time synchronization protocols, NTP does not attempt to synchronize the internal clocks of the remote time servers to each other. Rather, NTP synchronizes the clocks to universal standard time, using the best available time source and transmission paths to that time source.

Use the **show ntp statistics** command to verify the NTP synchronization status. For more information, see <u>NTP server statistics</u> on page 208. NTP uses the following criteria to determine the best available time server:

- The time server with the lowest stratum.
- The time server closest in proximity to the primary time server (reduces network delays).
- The time server that offers the highest claimed precision.

NTP accesses several (at least three) servers at the lower stratum level because it can apply an agreement algorithm to detect a problem on the time source.

### NTP modes of operation

NTP uses unicast client mode to enable time servers and NTP clients to communicate in the synchronization subnet. The switch supports only unicast client mode.

After you configure a set of remote time servers (peers), NTP creates a list that includes each time server IP address. The NTP client uses this list to determine the remote time servers to query for time information.

After the NTP client queries the remote time servers, the servers respond with various timestamps, along with information about their clocks, such as stratum, precision, and time reference, see Figure <u>3: NTP time servers operating in unicast client mode</u> on page 130. The NTP client reviews the list of responses from all available servers and chooses one as the best available time source from which to synchronize its internal clock.

The following figure shows how NTP time servers operate in unicast mode.

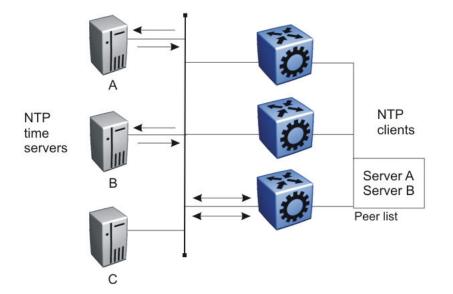


Figure 3: NTP time servers operating in unicast client mode

### **NTP** authentication

You can authenticate time synchronization to ensure that the local time server obtains its time services only from known sources. NTP authentication adds a level of security to your NTP configuration. By default, network time synchronization is not authenticated.

If you select authentication, the switch uses the Message Digest 5 (MD5) algorithm to produce a message digest of the key. The message digest is created using the key and the message, but the key itself is not sent. The MD5 algorithm verifies the integrity of the communication, authenticates the origin, and checks for timeliness.

To authenticate the message, the client authentication key must match that of the time server. Therefore, you must securely distribute the authentication key in advance (the client administrator must obtain the key from the server administrator and configure it on the client).

While a server can know many keys (identified by many key IDs) it is possible to declare only a subset of these as trusted. The time server uses this feature to share keys with a client that requires authenticated time and that trusts the server, but that is not trusted by the time server.

## **NTP configuration using ACLI**

This section describes how to configure the Network Time Protocol (NTP) using Avaya Command Line Interface (ACLI).

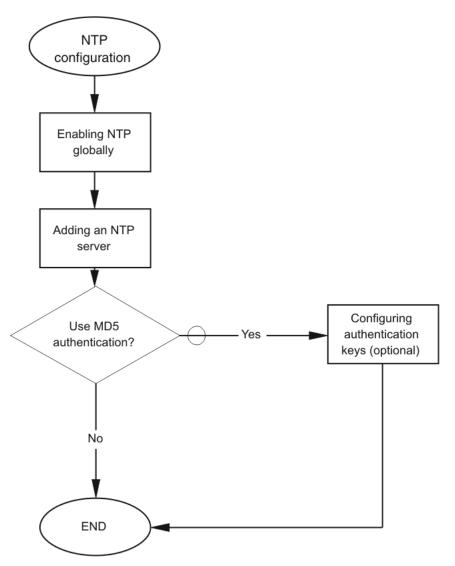
Before you configure NTP, you must perform the following tasks:

• Configure an IP interface on the switch and ensure that the NTP server is reachable through this interface. For instructions, see *Configuring IP Routing on Avaya Virtual Services Platform* 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-505.

#### Important:

NTP server MD5 authentication does not support passwords (keys) that start with a special character or that contain a space between characters.

This task flow shows the sequence of procedures you perform to configure NTP.





## **Enabling NTP globally**

Enable NTP globally. Default values are in effect for most parameters. You can customize NTP by modifying parameters.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

```
configure terminal
```

2. **(Optional)** Set the time interval between NTP updates or leave it at the default of 15 minutes:

```
ntp interval <10-1440>
```

#### Important:

If NTP is already activated, this configuration does not take effect until you disable NTP, and then re-enable it.

3. Enable NTP globally:

ntp

4. Create an authentication key:

```
ntp authentication-key <1-2147483647> WORD<0-8>
```

#### Example

Specify the interval between NTP updates to 10 minutes, and then enable NTP globally.

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#ntp interval 10
Switch:1(config)#ntp
```

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ntp command.

Variable	Value
authentication-key <1-2147483647> WORD<0-8>	Creates an authentication key for MD5 authentication. To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command. The default configuration is to delete the authentication key.
	NTP server MD5 authentication does not support passwords (keys) that start with a special character or contain a space between characters.
	WORD<0-8> specifies the secret key.
interval <10-1440>	Specifies the time interval, in minutes, between successive NTP updates.
	<ul> <li>The interval is expressed as an integer in a range from 10– 1440. The default value is 15.</li> </ul>
	If you changed the interval and then wanted to reset it back to the default, use the default ntp interval command.
server	Creates the NTP server.

### Adding an NTP server

#### About this task

Add an NTP server or modify existing NTP server parameters by performing this procedure. You can configure a maximum of 10 time servers.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Add an NTP server:

ntp server <A.B.C.D>

3. Configure additional options for the NTP server:

ntp server <A.B.C.D> [auth-enable] [authentication-key <0-2147483647>] [source-ip WORD <0-46>]

4. Activate the NTP server:

ntp server <A.B.C.D> enable

#### Example

Switch:> enable
Switch:1 configure terminal
Switch:1(config) # ntp server 192.0.2.187

### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ntp server command.

#### Table 34: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
A.B.C.D	Specifies the IP address of the server.

### **Configuring authentication keys**

#### About this task

Configure NTP authentication keys to use MD5 authentication.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Create an authentication key:

ntp authentication-key <1-2147483647> WORD<0-8>

3. Enable MD5 authentication for the server:

ntp server <A.B.C.D> auth-enable

4. Assign an authentication key to the server:

ntp server <A.B.C.D> authentication-key <0-2147483647>

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Create the authentication key:

Switch:1#(config)# ntp authentication-key 5 test

Enable MD5 authentication for the NTP server:

Switch:1#(config)# ntp server 192.0.2.187 auth-enable

Assign an authentication key to the server:

Switch:1#(config)# ntp server 192.0.2.187 authentication-key 5

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ntp and ntp server commands.

#### Table 35: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
A.B.C.D	Specifies the IP address of the server.
auth-enable	Activates MD5 authentication on this NTP server. The default is no MD5 authentication. To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
authentication-key <0-2147483647>	Specifies the key ID value used to generate the MD5 digest for the NTP server. The value range is an integer from 0– 2147483647. The default value is 0, which indicates disabled authentication. To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
enable	Activates the NTP server. To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.

## **NTP configuration using EDM**

This section describes how to configure the Network Time Protocol (NTP) using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM).

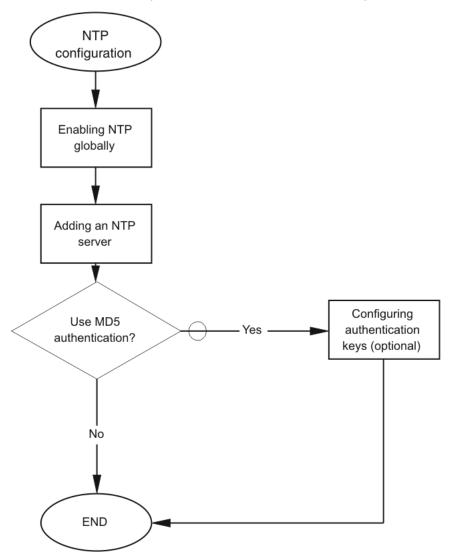
Before you configure NTP, you must perform the following tasks:

 Configure an IP interface on the switch and ensure that the NTP server is reachable through this interface. For instructions, see *Configuring IP Routing on Avaya Virtual Services Platform* 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-505.

#### Important:

NTP server MD5 authentication does not support passwords (keys) that start with a special character or that contain a space between characters.

This task flow shows you the sequence of procedures you perform to configure NTP.





## Enabling NTP globally

#### About this task

Enable NTP globally. Default values are in effect for most parameters. You can customize NTP by modifying parameters.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click NTP.
- 3. Click the **Globals** tab.
- 4. Select the Enable check box.
- 5. Click Apply.

### **Globals field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **Globals** tab.

Name	Description
Enable	Activates (true) or disables (false) NTP. By default, NTP is disabled.
Interval	Specifies the time interval (10–1440 minutes) between successive NTP updates. The default interval is 15 minutes.
	Important:
	If NTP is already activated, this configuration does not take effect until you disable NTP, and then reenable it.

## Adding an NTP server

#### About this task

Add a remote NTP server to the configuration by specifying its IP address. NTP adds this IP address to a list of servers, which the local NTP client uses to query remote time servers for time information. The list of qualified servers called to is a peer list.

You can configure a maximum of 10 time servers.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click NTP.
- 3. Click the Server tab.
- 4. Click Insert.
- 5. Specify the IP address of the NTP server.

6. Click Insert.

The IP address of the NTP server that you configured appears on the Server tab.

### Server field descriptions

Use the data in the following table to use the Server tab.

Name	Description
ServerAddress	Specifies the IP address of the remote NTP server.
Enable	Activates or disables the remote NTP server. The default is enabled.
Authentication	Activates or disables MD5 authentication on this NTP server. MD5 produces a message digest of the key. MD5 verifies the integrity of the communication, authenticates the origin, and checks for timeliness.
	The default is no MD5 authentication.
Keyld	Specifies the key ID used to generate the MD5 digest for this NTP server. You must specify a number between 1–214743647. The default is 0, which indicates that authentication is disabled.
AccessAttempts	Specifies the number of NTP requests sent to this NTP server.
AccessSuccess	Specifies the number of times this NTP server updated the time.
AccessFailure	Specifies the number of times the client rejected this NTP server while it attempted to update the time.
Stratum	This variable is the stratum of the server.
Version	This variable is the NTP version of the server.
RootDelay	This variable is the root delay of the server.
Precision	This variable is the NTP precision of the server in seconds.
Reachable	This variable is the NTP reach ability of the server.
Synchronized	This variable is the status of synchronization with the server.

## **Configuring authentication keys**

#### About this task

Assign an NTP key to use MD5 authentication on the server.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Edit**.
- 2. Click NTP.
- 3. Click the Key tab.
- 4. Click Insert.
- 5. Specify the secret key.
- 6. Click Insert.

## Key field descriptions

Name	Description	
Keyld	This field is the key ID that generates the MD5 digest. You must specify a value between 1–214743647. The default value is 1, which indicates that authentication is disabled.	
KeySecret	<ul> <li>t This field is the MD5 key that generates the MD5 digest. You must specify an alphanumeric string between 0–8</li> <li>Important:</li> </ul>	
	You cannot specify the number sign (#) as a value in the KeySecret field. The NTP server interprets the # as the beginning of a comment and truncates all text entered after the #.	

Use the data in the following table to use the Key tab.

# **Chapter 12: Secure Shell**

The following sections describe how to use Secure Shell (SSH) to enable secure communications support over a network for authentication, encryption, and network integrity.

## **Secure Shell fundamentals**

Secure Shell (SSH) is a client and server protocol that specifies the way to conduct secure communications over a network. The traffic these utilities generate is not encrypted when using other methods of remote access such as Telnet or FTP. Anyone that can see the network traffic can see all data, including passwords and user names. Secure Shell can replace Telnet and other remote login utilities. Secure File Transfer Protocol (SFTP) can replace FTP with an encrypted alternative.

#### 😵 Note:

The current release does not support Secure Copy (SCP). For the current release, use SFTP to transfer files securely.

Secure Shell supports a variety of the different public and private key encryption schemes available. Using the public key of the host server, the client and server negotiate to generate a session key known only to the client and the server. This one-time key encrypts all traffic between the client and the server. The VSP switch supports Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2).

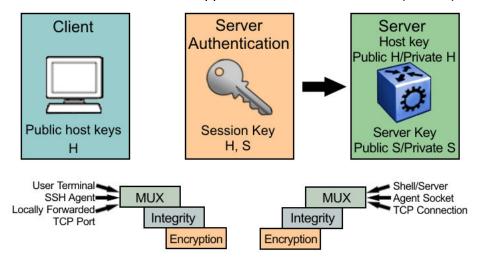


Figure 6: Overview of the SSHv2 protocol

By using a combination of host, server, and session keys, the SSHv2 protocol can provide strong authentication and secure communication over an insecure network, offering protection from the following security risks:

- IP spoofing
- IP source routing
- Domain name server (DNS) spoofing
- Man-in-the-middle/TCP hijacking attacks
- · Eavesdropping and password sniffing

Even if network security is compromised, traffic cannot be played back or decrypted, and the connection cannot be hijacked.

The SSH secure channel of communication does not provide protection against break-in attempts or denial-of-service (DoS) attacks.

With the SSHv2 server in the VSP switch, you can use an SSHv2 client to make a secure connection to the VSP switch and work with commercially available SSHv2 clients. For more information about supported clients, see <u>Table 37</u>: <u>Third-party SSH and SCP client software</u> on page 147. The VSP switch also supports outbound connections to remote SSHv2 servers to provide complete inbound and outbound secure access.

#### **Security features**

The SSHv2 protocol supports the following security features:

• Authentication. This feature determines, in a reliable way, the SSHv2 client. During the log on process, the SSHv2 client is queried for a digital proof of identity.

Supported authentications with the switch as a server for SSHv2, are: RSA, DSA, and passwords. Supported authentications with the switch as a client for SSHv2, are: DSA and passwords. The VSP switch does not support RSA when the switch acts as a client.

When the VSP switch acts as an SSH server the VSP switch allows up to four sessions at a time. However, only one SSH public key encryption per access level is allowed at a time. For instance, if multiple SSH public key encryption clients have to connect to the VSP server with the same access level, such as rwa then the clients must connect to the server one-by-one as the VSP only supports one public key per access level.

• Encryption. The SSHv2 server uses encryption algorithms to scramble data and render it unintelligible except to the receiver.

Supported encryption and ciphers are: 3DES, AES128-cbc, AES192-cbc, and AES256-cbc, MD5, secure hash algorithm 1 (SHA-1) and SHA-2.

• Integrity. This feature guarantees that the data transmits from the sender to the receiver without alterations. If a third party captures and modifies the traffic, the SSHv2 server detects this alteration.

#### SSHv2 considerations using EDM

You must use ACLI to initially configure SSHv2. You can use Enterprise Device Manager (EDM) to change the SSHv2 configuration parameters. However, Avaya recommends that you use ACLI. Avaya also recommends that you use the console port (10101) to configure the SSHv2 parameters.

#### Important:

Do not enable SSHv2 secure mode using Configuration and Orchestration Manager (COM). If you enable SSHv2 secure mode, then the system disables Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). This locks you out of a COM session. Enable SSH secure mode using ACLI or EDM.

SSHv2 secure mode is different from enhanced secure mode and hsecure. SSHv2 secure mode disables unsecure management protocols on the device such as FTP, rlogin, SNMP, telnet and TFTP. SSHv2 secure mode is enabled through the **ssh secure** command.

When you enable SSHv2 secure mode, the system disables FTP, rlogin, SNMPv1, SNMPv2, SNMPv3, telnet and TFTP. After SSHv2 secure mode is enabled, you can choose to enable individual non-secure protocols. However, after you save the configuration and restart the system, the non-secure protocol is again disabled, even though it is shown as enabled in the configuration file. After you enable SSHv2 secure mode, you cannot enable non-secure protocols by disabling SSHv2 secure mode.

You can disable block-snmp after you enable SSHv2 secure mode, and you will be able to connect using COM again.

#### SSHv2 support for IPv6

On IPv6 networks, the VSP switch supports SSHv2 server only. The VSP switch does not support outbound SSHv2 client over IPv6. On IPv4 networks, the VSP switch supports both SSHv2 server and SSHv2 client.

#### Interoperability

The VSP SSHv2 client can operate with the following SSHv2 servers:

- Another Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8000 Series
- ERS 8600/8800
- VSP 4000
- Linux running Open SSH
- VSP 7000
- VSP 7200
- VSP 9000

#### Outbound connections

The SSHv2 client supports SSHv2 DSA public key authentication and password authentication.

😵 Note:

You must enable SSH globally before you can generate SSH DSA user keys.

The SSHv2 client is a secure replacement for outbound Telnet. Password authentication is the easiest way to use the SSHv2 client feature. With the VSP modular switch, you can use the SSHv2 client feature as shown in the following example:

#### Linux/PC ssh (password) > VSP ssh (password) > VSP ssh (password) > VSP

Instead of password authentication, you can use DSA public key authentication between the VSP SSHv2 client and an SSHv2 server. Before you can perform a public key authentication, you must generate the key pair files and distribute the key files to all the SSHv2 server systems. Because

passphrase encrypts and further protects the key files, you must provide a passphrase to decrypt the key files as part of the DSA authentication. The following is an example of DSA public key authentication between the VSP SSHv2 client and the SSHv2 server:

# Linux/PC ssh (DSA authorization) > VSP ssh (DSA authorization) > VSP ssh (DSA authorization) > VSP

To attempt public key authentication, the SSHv2 client looks for the associated DSA key pair files in the /intflash/.ssh directory. If no DSA key pair files are found, the SSHv2 client automatically prompts you for password authentication. If the SSHv2 client succeeds with the authentication, then a new secured SSHv2 session is established to the remote SSHv2 server. For more information, see <u>Table 38: DSA authentication access level and file name</u> on page 149.

### Important:

If you configure the DSA user key with a passphrase but you do not supply the correct passphrase when you try to make the SSHv2 connection, then the system defaults back to the password authentication. If the SSHv2 client succeeds with the authentication, then a new secured SSHv2 session is established to the remote SSHv2 server.

#### SSH version 2

SSH version 2 (SSHv2) protocol is a complete rewrite of the SSHv1 protocol. In SSHv2 the functions are divided among three layers:

• SSH Transport Layer (SSH-TRANS)

The SSH Transport Layer manages the server authentication and provides the initial connection between the client and the server. Once the connection is established, the Transport Layer provides a secure, full-duplex connection between the client and server.

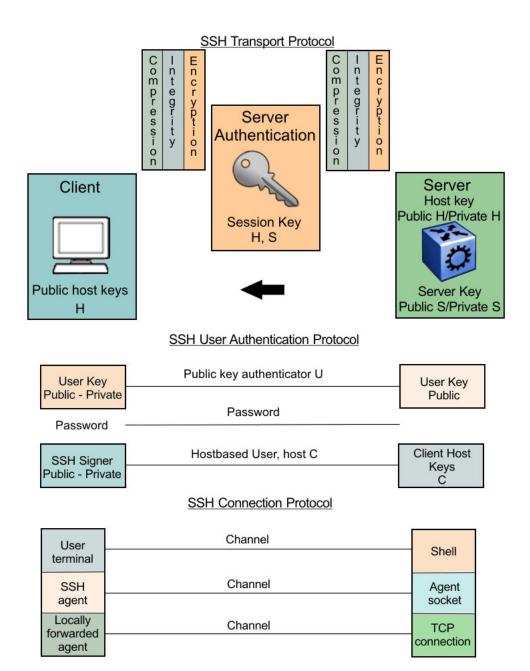
• SSH Authentication Protocol (SSH-AUTH)

The SSH Authentication Protocol runs on top of the SSH Transport Layer and authenticates the client-side user to the server. SSH-AUTH defines three authentication methods: public key, host-based, and password. SSH-AUTH provides a single authenticated tunnel for the SSH connection protocol.

SSH Connection Protocol (SSH-CONN)

The SSH Connection Protocol runs on top of the SSH Transport Layer and user authentication protocols. SSH-CONN provides interactive logon sessions, remote execution of commands, forwarded TCP/IP connections, and forwarded X11 connections. These services are multiplexed into the single encrypted tunnel provided by the SSH transport layer.

The following figure shows the three layers of the SSHv2 protocol.



#### Figure 7: Separate SSH version 2 protocols

The modular approach of SSHv2 improves on the security, performance, and portability of the SSHv1 protocol.

#### Important:

The SSHv1 and SSHv2 protocols are not compatible. The VSP switch does not support SSHv1.

## User ID log of an SSH session established by SFTP

The VSP modular switch logs the user ID of an SSH session initiated by SFTP. If SFTP establishes an SSH session, the message appears in the following format:

CP1 [03/12/13 21:49:11.374] 0x000d858b 0000000 GlobalRouter SSH INFO New connection from ip 10.10.10.98 port 59826 CP1 [03/12/13 21:49:11.377] 0x000d8603 0000000 GlobalRouter SSH INFO Enabling compatibility mode for protocol 2.0 CP1 [03/12/13 21:49:16.577] 0x000d8602 0000000 GlobalRouter SSH INFO Accepted password for ROOT from 10.10.10.98 port 59826 ssh2 CP1 [03/12/13 21:49:16.684] 0x000d8589 0000000 GlobalRouter SSH INFO SSH: User rwa login /dev/pts/16 from 10.10.10.98

• rwa is the user name.

## User key files

Generating keys requires that you have free space on the flash. A typical configuration requires less than 2 kbyte of free space. Before you generate a key, verify that you have sufficient space on the flash, using the dir command. If the flash is full when you attempt to generate a key, an error message appears and the key is not generated. You must delete some unused files and regenerate the key.

If you remove only the public keys, enabling the SSH does not create new public keys.

SSHv2 password authentication uses the same login and password authentication mechanism as Telnet. SSHv2 client also supports DSA public key authentication compatible with the VSP modular switch SSHv2 server and Linux SSHv2 server for SSHv2.

If the VSP modular switch is the client, use the following table to locate the DSA user key files for DSA authentication for user access level rwa.

SSH server	SSH client side	SSH server side
VOSS switch with enhanced secure mode	Private and public keys by access level:	Public keys on the server side based on access level:
disabled	<ul> <li>rwa—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rwa (private key), /intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_rwa.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>rwa—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwa (public key)</li> <li>rw—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rw (public)</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rw—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rw (private key), /intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rw.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	key) • ro—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_ro (public
	<ul> <li>ro—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_ro (private key), /intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_ro.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	key) • rwl1—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl1 (public key)
	<ul> <li>rwl1—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rwl1 (private key), /intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_rwl1.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>rwl2—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl2 (public key)</li> <li>rwl3—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl3</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rwl2—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rwl2 (private key), /intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_rwl2.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	(public key)

#### Table 36: DSA user key files

SSH server	SSH client side	SSH server side
	<ul> <li>rwl3—/intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_rwl3 (private key), /intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_rwl3.pub (public key)</li> </ul>	
VOSS switch with enhanced secure mode enabled	<ul> <li>Private and public keys by access role level:</li> <li>administrator—/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_admin (private key), / intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_admin.pub (public key)</li> <li>operator —/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_operator (private key), / intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_operator.pub (public key)</li> <li>security —/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_security (private key), / intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_security.pub (public key)</li> <li>auditor —/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_auditor (private key), / intflash/.ssh/id_dsa_auditor.pub (public key)</li> <li>privilege —/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_priv.pub (public key)</li> <li>privilege —/intflash/.ssh/ id_dsa_priv.pub (public key)</li> <li>~/.ssh/id_dsa (private key) file permission 400</li> </ul>	Public keys on the server side based on access level: • administrator—/intflash/.ssh/ dsa_key_admin (public key) • operator—/intflash/.ssh/ dsa_key_operator (public key) • security—/intflash/.ssh/ dsa_key_security (public key) • pirivilege—/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_priv (public key) • auditor—/intflash/.ssh/ dsa_key_auditor (public key) * auditor—/intflash/.ssh/ dsa_key_auditor (public key)
	~/.ssh/id_dsa.pub (public key) file permission 644	
ERS 8600/8800	—	/flash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwa (public key)

When you attempt to make an SSH connection from the VSP modular switch, the SSHv2 client looks in its own internal flash for the public key pair files. If the key files exist, the SSHv2 client prompts you for the passphrase to decrypt the key files. If the passphrase is correct, the SSHv2 client initiates the DSA key authentication to the remote SSHv2 server. The SSHv2 client looks for the login user access level public key file on the SSHv2 server to process and validate the public key authentication is successful, then the SSHv2 session is established.

If no matching user key pair files exist on the client side when initiating the SSHv2 session, or if the DSA authentication fails, you are automatically prompted for a password to attempt password authentication.

If the remote SSHv2 server is a Linux system, the server looks for the login user public key file ~/.ssh/authorized\_keys by default for DSA authentication. For Linux SSH client, the user DSA key pair files are located in the user home directory as ~/.ssa/id\_dsa and ~/.ssa/id\_dsa.pub.

## **Block SNMP**

The boot flag setting for block-snmp (boot config flags block-snmp) and the runtime configuration of SSH secure (ssh secure) each modify the block-snmp boot flag. If you enable SSH secure mode, the system automatically sets the block-snmp boot flag to true; the change takes effect immediately. After enabling SSH in secure mode, you can manually change the block-snmp flag to false to allow both SSH and SNMP access.

## Important:

The block flag setting for block-snmp blocks Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)v1, SNMPv2, and SNMPv3.

#### Third-party SSH and SCP client software

The following table describes the third-party SSH and SCP client software that has been tested but is not included with this release.

#### Note:

The current release does not support Secure Copy (SCP). For the current release, use SFTP to transfer files securely.

SSH Client	Secure Shell (SSH)	Secure Copy (SCP)	
Tera Term Pro with	Supports SSHv2.	Client distribution does not include SCP	
TTSSH extension	Authentication:	client.	
MS Windows	- RSA is supported when the switch acts as a server. The VSP switch does not support RSA as a client.		
	- DSA		
	- Password		
	<ul> <li>Provides a keygen tool.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>It creates both RSA and DSA keys.</li> </ul>		
Secure Shell Client	Supports SSHv2 client.	Client distribution includes an SCP	
Windows 2000	Authentication	client that is not compatible with The VSP modular switch.	
	- DSA		
	- Password		
	<ul> <li>Provides a keygen tool.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>It creates a DSA key in SSHv2 format.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>The VSP modular switch generates a log message stating</li> </ul>		

#### Table 37: Third-party SSH and SCP client software

SSH Client	Secure Shell (SSH)	Secure Copy (SCP)
	that a DSA key has been generated.	
OpenSSH	Supports SSHv2 clients.	Client distribution includes an SCP
Unix Solaris 2.5 / 2.6	Authentication:	client that is supported on The VSP modular switch.
	- RSA is supported when the switch acts as a server. The VSP switch does not support RSA as a client.	
	- DSA	
	- Password	
	Provides a keygen tool.	
	<ul> <li>It creates both RSA and DSA keys.</li> </ul>	

#### VSP switch as client

The VSP switch acting a the SSHv2 client generates a DSA public and private server key pair. The public part of the key for DSA is stored in the following location:

/intflash/.ssh/dsa pub.key

The public part of the key must be copied to the SSH server and be named according to the naming requirement of the server.

If the server is a VSP device, please consult <u>Table 38: DSA authentication access level and file</u> <u>name</u> on page 149 for proper naming convention.

If a DSA key pair does not exist, then the VSP modular switch automatically generates one when you enable the SSHv2 server. You can also generate the DSA key pair using the ssh dsa-user-key [WORD<1-15>] [size <512-1024>] command.

You need to copy the DSA public key to the SSHv2 server that you connect to using the VSP as a client. RSA is not supported when using the VSP switch as a client, but you can use RSA when the VSP switch is acting as the server.

#### VSP switch as server

After you install one of the SSHv2 clients you must generate a client and server key using the RSA or DSA algorithms.

To authenticate an SSHv2 client using DSA, the administrator must copy the public part of the client DSA key to /intflash/.ssh directory on the VSP modular switch that is acting as the SSHv2 server. That file that is copied over to the SSHv2 server must be named according to <u>Table 38: DSA</u> authentication access level and file name on page 149.

#### DSA authentication access level and file name

The following table lists the access levels and file names that you must use to store the SSHv2 client authentication information using DSA onto the VSP modular switch acting as the SSHv2 Server.

Client key format or WSM	Access level	File name
	RWA	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwa
Client key in non IETF and IETF format with enhanced secure mode disabled	RW	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rw
	RO	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_ro
Note:	L3	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl3
The VSP switch supports IETF and non-IETF for DSA.	L2	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl2
	L1	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_rwl1
	administrator	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_admin
	operator	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_operator
Client key in enhanced secure mode	security	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_security
	privilege	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_priv
	auditor	/intflash/.ssh/dsa_key_auditor

The VSP modular switch generates an RSA public and private server key pair. The public part of the key for RSA is stored in /intflash/.ssh/ssh\_key\_rsa\_pub.key. If an RSA key pair does not exist, then the VSP modular switch automatically generates one when you enable the SSH server. To authenticate a client using RSA, the administrator must copy the public part of the client RSA key to the VSP switch.

#### RSA authentication access level and file name

The following table lists the access levels and file names you can use for storing the SSH client authentication information using RSA.

Client key format or WSM	Access level	File name
	RWA	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_rwa
	RW	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_rw
Client key in IETF format with enhanced	RO	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_ro
secure mode disabled.	L3	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_rwl3
	L2	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_rwl2
	L1	/flash/.ssh/rsa_key_rwl1
	administrator	/intflash/.ssh/rsa_key_admin
	operator	/intflash/.ssh/rsa_key_operator
Client key with enhanced secure mode enabled	security	/intflash/.ssh/rsa_key_security
	privilege	/intflash/.ssh/rsa_key_priv
	auditor	/intflash/.ssh/rsa_key_auditor

## SSL certificate

The switch loads the SSL certificate during the system boot-up time. If a certificate exists in the / intflash/.ssh/ directory during the boot-up process, then the system loads that certificate. The system does not confirm if the certificate is still valid. If no certificate exists, then the system generates a default certificate (host.cert and also the key file, host.key) with a validity period of 365 days.

If you need to use your own SSL certificate, you can upload the certificate and key files to the / intflash/.ssh/ directory, and then rename the files to host.cert and host.key. Restart the system and the new certificate will be loaded during the boot-up process. Alternatively, you can use the ssl certificate reset command to install an existing certificate without a system reboot.

You can also use the ssl certificate [validity-period-in-days <30-3650>] command to install a new certificate and optionally, define an expiration date. You do not need to restart the system after you use this command.

The system does not validate the expiration date on the certificate and performs no action after the certificate expires. To confirm the expiration date, you must use Microsoft Internet Explorer or Mozilla Firefox to view the certificate. If you cannot connect to the switch using HTTPS and the web portal displays a message of invalid certificate, that is an indication that the certificate on the switch is expired. You can replace the host cert and host key files with new files generated off the switch, or you can use the procedure Managing an SSL certificate on page 158 to generate a new certificate on the switch with a specific validity period.

The default certificate key length for a certificate generated on the switch is 2,048 bits.

#### SSH rekeying

SSH rekeying is an SSHv2 feature that allows the SSH server/client to force a key exchange between server and client, changing the encryption and integrity keys. Once you enable SSH rekeying, key exchanges occur after a pre-determined time interval or after the data transmitted in the session reaches the data-limit threshold.

SSH rekeying occurs when either the time-interval or data-limit value is met. The default timeinterval is 1 hour and the default data-limit is 1 GB. These values are configurable using the **ssh rekey** command.

SSh rekey is optional. You can enable SSH rekey only when global SSH is enabled. Most SSH clients and servers do not provide a rekey mechanism; in that case, you should not enable SSH rekey. Active sessions shut down if the rekey fails.

# Secure Shell configuration using ACLI

Use Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2) to enable secure communications support over a network for authentication, encryption, and network Integrity.

On IPv6 networks, the VSP switch supports SSHv2 server only. The VSP switch does not support outbound SSHv2 client over IPv6. On IPv4 networks, the VSP switch supports both SSHv2 server and SSHv2 client.

## Before you begin

- Disable the sshd daemon. All SSHv2 commands, except enable, require that you disable the sshd daemon.
- Set the user access level to read/write/all community strings.
- Disable all nonsecure access services. Avaya recommends that you disable the following services: Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP), File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Telnet, and rlogin. For more information about disabling access services, see <u>Enabling remote access services</u> on page 41.
- Avaya recommends that you use the console port (10101) to configure the SSHv2 parameters.

# Downloading the software

Download new software to upgrade the VSP switch. Software downloads can include encryption modules and software images.

#### Before you begin

• You must have access to the new software from the Avaya support site: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u>. You need a valid user or site ID and password.

#### About this task

For more information about file names for the current release, see *Release Notes for VSP Operating System Software*, NN47227-401.

## Procedure

- 1. From an Internet browser, browse to https://support.avaya.com.
- 2. Under Support by Product, select Downloads.
- 3. In the product search field, type the product name.
- 4. In the Choose Release field, click a release number.
- 5. Click the download title to view the selected information.
- 6. Click the file you want to download.
- 7. Login to download the required software file.
- 8. Use an FTP client in binary mode to transfer the file to the VSP switch.

# Enabling the SSHv2 server

Enable the SSHv2 server to provide secure communications for accessing the switch. The VSP switch does not support SSHv1.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable the SSH server:

boot config flags sshd

3. Save the configuration file:

save config

#### Example

Enable the SSHv2 server:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#boot config flags sshd
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

# Setting SSH configuration parameters

Configure Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2) parameters to support public and private key encryption connections. The VSP switch does not support SSHv1.

#### About this task

You must enable SSH globally before you can generate SSH DSA user keys.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable DSA authentication:

ssh dsa-auth

3. Generate a new DSA host key:

ssh dsa-host-key [<512-1024>]

4. Generate a new SSH DSA user key:

ssh dsa-user-key WORD<1-15>

5. Configure the maximum number of SSH sessions:

ssh max-sessions <0-8>

6. Enable password authentication:

ssh pass-auth

7. Configure the SSH connection port:

ssh port <22,1024..49151>

8. Enable RSA authentication:

ssh rsa-auth

9. Generate a new RSA host key:

ssh rsa-host-key [<1024-2048>]

10. Enable SSH secure mode:

ssh secure

11. Configure the authentication timeout:

ssh timeout <1-120>

12. Configure the SSH version:

ssh version <v2only>

#### Example

Enable DSA authentication and configure the maximum number of SSH session:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#ssh dsa-auth
Switch:1(config)#ssh max-sessions 5
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ssh command.

#### Table 40: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
dsa-auth	Enables or disables the DSA authentication. The default is enabled. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-auth, to disable DSA authentication.
dsa-host-key [<512-1024>]	Generates a new SSH DSA host key. Specify an optional key size between 512 and 1024 The default is 1024. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-host-key, to disable SSH DSA host key.
dsa-user-key WORD <1-15>	Generates a new SSH DSA user key. WORD<1–15> specifies the user access level.
	You must enable SSH globally before you can generate SSH DSA user keys.
	If enhanced secure mode is disabled, the valid user access levels for the switch are:
	<ul> <li>rwa — Specifies read-write-all.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rw — Specifies read-write.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>ro — Specifies read-only.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rwl1 — Specifies read-write for Layer 1.</li> </ul>

appropriate authorization rights to commands based on that role.If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the value user access levels for th switch are:• admin—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations, show commands, and the ability to view the log file and security commands. The administrator role is the highest level of user roles.• operator—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands.• auditor—Specifies a user role that can view log files and view all configurations, except password configuration.• security—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admin However, the user with the privilege level must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key MORO<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.max-sessions <0-8>Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.pass-authEnables password authentication. The default is enabled.port <22,1024-49151>Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is enabled.port <22,1024-49151>Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.	Variable	Value
If you enable enhanced secure mode, the switch uses role-based authentication. You associate each username with a specific role and th appropriate authorization rights to commands based on that role.         If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the value user access levels for th switch are:       • admin—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations, show commands. The administrator role is the highest level of user roles.         • operator—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands.         • auditor—Specifies a user role that can view log files and view all configurations, except password configuration.         • security—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admin However, the user with the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key MORD<11-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.         max-sessions <0-8>       Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.		rwl2 — Specifies read-write for Layer 2.
authentication. You associate each username with a specific role and th appropriate authorization rights to commands based on that role. If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the value user access levels for th switch are: • admin—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations, show commands. The administrator role is the highest level of user roles. • operator—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations, packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands. • auditor—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar teranot. Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations. • security—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admit However, the user with the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key WORD<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.max-sessions <0-8>Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.post <22,1024-49151>Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is enabled.port <22,1024-49151>Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is enabled.generationSets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the top or number. The default is enabled.user hon operator before this		<ul> <li>rwl3 — Specifies read-write for Layer 3.</li> </ul>
switch are:• admin—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations, show commands, and the ability to view the log file and security commands. The administrator role is the highest level of user roles.• operator—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands.• auditor—Specifies a user role that can view log files and view all configurations, except password configuration.• security—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations.• priv—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admin However, the user with the privilege role must be authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.Werb<		authentication. You associate each username with a specific role and the
show commands, and the ability to view the log file and security commands. The administrator role is the highest level of user roles.         • operator—Specifies a user role with access to all of the configurations packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands.         • auditor—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations.         • security—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations.         • priv—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admin However, the user with the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.         use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key WORD       WORD         word       Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to		If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the value user access levels for the switch are:
packet forwarding on Layer 2 and Layer 3, and has access to show commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs ar cannot access security and password commands.• auditor—Specifies a user role that can view log files and view all configurations, except password configuration.• security—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations.• priv—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admi However, the user role at the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.Warset the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key WoRd<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.max-sessions <0-8>Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.pass-authEnables password authentication. The default is enabled.port <22,1024-49151>Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22Important: You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.rsa-authEnables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		show commands, and the ability to view the log file and security
configurations, except password configuration.         • security—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings ar the ability to view the configurations.         • priv—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admi However, the user with the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key WORD<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.         max-sessions <0-8>       Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		commands to view the configuration, but cannot view the audit logs and
the ability to view the configurations.         priv—Specifies a user role with access to all of the commands that the administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-administrator has access to all of the commands that the privilege role must be authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege role must be authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only.         wax-sessions <0-8>       Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key word(22,1024-49151>         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is enabled.         use the no operato		
administrator has access to, and is referred to as an emergency-admi However, the user with the privilege role must be authenticated within VSP switch locally. RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication is not accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch through the console port only. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh dsa-user-key WORD<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.max-sessions <0-8>Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.pass-authEnables password authentication. The default is enabled.port <22,1024-49151>Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22Important: You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.rsa-authEnables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		<ul> <li>security—Specifies a user role with access only to security settings and the ability to view the configurations.</li> </ul>
WORD<1-15>, to disable SSH DSA user key.         max-sessions <0-8>       Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from to 8. Default is 4.         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		accessible. A user role at the privilege level must login to the switch
to 8. Default is 4.         pass-auth       Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.         port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		
port <22,1024-49151>       Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:       You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.	max-sessions <0-8>	Specifies the maximum number of SSH sessions allowed. A value from 0 to 8. Default is 4.
TCP port number. The default is 22         Important:         You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth         Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.	pass-auth	Enables password authentication. The default is enabled.
You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.         rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.	port <22,1024-49151>	Sets the Secure Shell (SSH) connection port. <22,1024 to 49151> is the TCP port number. The default is 22
rsa-auth       Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.         Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		Important:
Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disa RSA authentication.		You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSH connection port.
RSA authentication.	rsa-auth	Enables RSA authentication. The default is enabled.
rsa-host-key /<1024–2048>1 Generates a new SSH RSA host key. Specify an optional key size from		Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-auth, to disable RSA authentication.
1024 to 2048. The default is 2048.	rsa-host-key [<1024–2048>]	Generates a new SSH RSA host key. Specify an optional key size from 1024 to 2048. The default is 2048.
Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-host-key, to disable SSH RSA host key.		Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh rsa-host-key, to disable SSH RSA host key.

Variable	Value	
secure	Enables SSH in secure mode and immediately disables the access services SNMP, FTP, TFTP, rlogin, and Telnet. The default is disabled. Use the no operator before this parameter, no ssh secure, to disable SSH in secure mode.	
timeout <1-120>	Specifies the SSH connection authentication timeout in seconds. Default is 60 seconds.	
version <v2only></v2only>	Configures the SSH version. The default is v2only. The switch only supports SSHv2.	

# Verifying and displaying SSH configuration information

Verify that SSH services are enabled on the VSP switch and display SSH configuration information to ensure that the SSH parameters are properly configured.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log on to the switch to enter User EXEC mode.
- 2. Verify that SSH services are enabled and view the SSH configuration:

show ssh <global|session>

#### Example

Display global system SSH information:

Switch:1(config) #show ssh global

```
Total Active Sessions : 0

version : v2only

port : 22

max-sessions : 4

timeout : 60

action rsa-keygen : rsa-keysize 2048

action dsa-keygen : dsa-keysize 1024

rsa-auth : true

dsa-auth : true

pass-auth : false

enable : true
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the show ssh command.

Table	41:	Variable	definitions
-------	-----	----------	-------------

Variable	Value	
global	Display global system SSH information.	
session	Display the current session SSH information.	

# Connecting to a remote host using the SSH client

Configure the SSHv2 parameters to connect to a remote host.

#### About this task

The command format, for the ACLI SSH client command, is similar to Telnet with two additional parameters: -I login and an optional -p port parameter.

On IPv6 networks, the VSP switch supports SSH server only. The VSP switch does not support outbound SSH client over IPv6. On IPv4 networks, the VSP switch supports both SSH server and SSH client.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Privileged EXEC mode:

enable

- 2. Enable SSH server.
- 3. Connect to a remote host:

ssh WORD<1-256> -1 WORD<1-32> [-p <1-32768>]

#### Example

Connect to the remote host:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#ssh 192.0.2.1 -1 rwa
```

## Variable definitions

Use the following table to use the ssh command.

#### Table 42: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<1-32>	Specifies the user login name of the remote SSH server.
-p <1-32768>	Specifies the port number to connect to the remote SSH server. The default is 22.

# Generating user key files

Configure the SSH parameters to generate DSA user key files.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

- 2. Enable SSH server.
- 3. Create the DSA user key file:

```
ssh dsa-user-key [WORD<1-15>][size <512-1024>]
```

- 4. Enter the encryption password to protect the key file.
- 5. Copy the user public key file to the remote SSH servers.
- 6. If you are generating the compatible keys on the Linux system, use the following steps:
  - a. Create the DSA user key file:

ssh-keygen -t dsa

- b. Copy the user public key to the remote SSH servers.
  - 😵 Note:

The DSA pair key files can be generated on the Linux system and used by the SSH client of the VSP switch.

#### Example

Create the DSA user key file with the user access level set to read-write-all and size of the DSA user key set to 512 bits:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#ssh dsa-user-key rwa size 512
```

## Variable definitions

Use the following table to use the ssh dsa-user-key command.

Variable	Value
WORD<1-15 >	Specifies the user access level. The valid user access levels for the switch are:
	• rwa—Specifies read-write-all.
	<ul> <li>rw—Specifies read-write.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>ro—Specifies read-only</li> </ul>
	• rwl3—Specifies read-write for Layer 3.
	• rwl2—Specifies rread-write for Layer 2.
	• rwl1—Specifies read-write for Layer 1.
size <512–1024>	Specifies the size of the DSA user key. The default is 1024 bits.

# Managing an SSL certificate

Perform this procedure to manage an SSL certificate on the switch.

#### About this task

If a certificate is already present, you must confirm that it can be deleted before a new one is created.

After you create a certificate, the system logs one of the following INFO alarms:

- New default Server Certificate and Key are generated and installed
- Current Server Certificate and Key are installed

The default certificate key length for a certificate generated on the switch is 2,048 bits.

Note:

The ssl certificate [validity-period-in-days <30-3650>] and ssl certificate reset commands in this procedure do not require a system reboot.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Create and install a new self-signed certificate:

```
ssl certificate [validity-period-in-days <30-3650>]
```

3. Install an existing certificate or create a new self-signed certificate with a one-year expiration:

ssl certificate reset

#### 😵 Note:

If a certificate is already present, this command installs that certificate. If a certificate is not already present, this command creates and installs a new certificate.

4. Delete a certificate:

no ssl certificate

😵 Note:

The certificate loaded in memory remains valid until you use the ssl reset command or reboot the system.

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the ssl certificate command.

Variable	Value
validity-period-in-days <30-3650>	Specifies an expiration time for the certificate. The default is 365 days.

# **Disabling SFTP without disabling SSH**

Disable SFTP while allowing SSH to remain active.

#### Before you begin

Enhanced secure mode must be enabled. For information about enabling enhanced secure mode, see <u>Enabling enhanced secure mode</u> on page 181.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable the SSHv2 server:

enable ssh sftp

3. Save the configuration file:

save config

# Secure Shell configuration using Enterprise Device Manager

Use Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2) to enable secure communications support over a network for authentication, encryption, and network Integrity.

On IPv6 networks, the VSP switch supports SSHv2 server only. The VSP switch does not support outbound SSHv2 client over IPv6. The VSP switch supports both SSHv2 server and SSHv2 client.

For more information, see Changing Secure Shell configuration parameters on page 160.

For information about downloading and enabling security encryption, see <u>Downloading the</u> <u>software</u> on page 151.

## Downloading the software

Download new software to upgrade the VSP switch. Software downloads can include encryption modules and software images.

## Before you begin

• You must have access to the new software from the Avaya support site: <u>https://support.avaya.com</u>. You need a valid user or site ID and password.

#### About this task

For more information about file names for the current release, see *Release Notes for VSP Operating System Software*, NN47227-401.

#### Procedure

- 1. From an Internet browser, browse to https://support.avaya.com.
- 2. Under Support by Product, select Downloads.
- 3. In the product search field, type the product name.
- 4. In the Choose Release field, click a release number.
- 5. Click the download title to view the selected information.
- 6. Click the file you want to download.
- 7. Login to download the required software file.
- 8. Use an FTP client in binary mode to transfer the file to the VSP switch.

# **Changing Secure Shell parameters**

You can use Enterprise Device Manager to change the SSHv2 configuration parameters. However, Avaya recommends using the ACLI to perform the initial configuration of SSHv2. The VSP switch does not support SSHv1.

#### Before you begin

• The user access level is read/write/all community strings.

#### About this task

If the SSHv2 service is enabled, all fields are dimmed until the SSH service is disabled. You must disable the SSH service before setting the SSH service parameters.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: Configuration > Security > Control Path.
- 2. Click SSH.
- 3. In the Enable options, choose the type of SSH service you want to enable.
- 4. In the **Version** options, choose a version.
- 5. In the **Port** field, type a port.
- 6. In the **MaxSession** field, type the maximum number of sessions allowed.
- 7. In the **Timeout** field, type the timeout.

- 8. From the **KeyAction** options, choose a key action.
- 9. In the **RsaKeySize** box, type the RSA key size.
- 10. In the **DSAKeySize** field, type the DSA key size.
- 11. Select the **RsaAuth** box for RSA authentication if you want.
- 12. Select the **DsaAuth** box for DSA authentication if you want.
- 13. Select the **PassAuth** box for password authentication if you want.
- 14. Click Apply.

## **SSH field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the **SSH** tab.

Name	Description	
Enable	Enables, disables, or securely enables SSHv2. The options are:	
	• false	
	• true	
	• secure	
	Select false to disable SSHv2 services. Select true to enable SSHv2 services. Select secure to enable SSH and disable access services (SNMP, FTP, TFTP, rlogin, and Telnet). The default is false.	
	Important:	
	Do not enable SSHv2 secure mode using Enterprise Device Manager. Enabling secure mode disables SNMP. This locks you out of the Enterprise Device Manager session. Enable SSHv2 secure mode using ACLI.	
Version	Configures the SSH version. The options are:	
	• v2only	
	The default is v2only.	
Port	Configures the SSHv2 connection port number. <22 or 1024–49151> is the port range of SSHv2.	
	Important:	
	You cannot configure the TCP port 6000 as SSHv2 connection port.	
MaxSession	Configures the maximum number of SSHv2 sessions allowed.	
	The value can be from 0 to 8. The default is 4.	
Timeout	Configures the SSHv2 authentication connection timeout in seconds. The default is 60 seconds.	
KeyAction	Configures the SSHv2 key action. The options are:	
	• none	
	• generateDsa	

Name	Description
	• generateRsa
	• deleteDsa
	• deleteRsa
RsaKeySize	Configures SSHv2 RSA key size. The value can be from 1024 to 2048. The default is 2048.
DsaKeySize	Configures the SSHv2 DSA key size. The value can be from 512 to 1024. The default is 1024.
RsaAuth	Enables or disables SSHv2 RSA authentication. The default is enabled.
DsaAuth	Enables or disables SSHv2 DSA authentication. The default is enabled.
PassAuth	Enables or disables SSHv2 RSA password authentication. The default is enabled.

# Chapter 13: System access

The following sections describe how to access the switch, create users, and user passwords.

# System access fundamentals

This section contains conceptual information about how to access the switch and create users and user passwords for access.

# Logging on to the system

After the startup sequence is complete, the login prompt appears.

#### Note:

With enhanced secure mode enabled, the person in the role-based authentication level of administrator configures the login and password values for the other role-based authentication levels. The administrator initially logs on to the switch using the default login of admin and the default password of admin. After the initial login, the switch prompts the administrator to create a new password.

The administrator then configures default logins and passwords for the other users based on the role-based authentication levels of the user. For more information on enhanced secure mode, see <u>System access security enhancements using ACLI</u> on page 180.

The following table shows the default values for login and password for the console and Telnet sessions.

Table 43: Access	levels and default logon values
------------------	---------------------------------

Access level	Description	Default logon	Default password
Read-only	Permits view only configuration and status information. This access level is equivalent to Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) read-only community access.	ro	ro

Access level	Description	Default logon	Default password
Layer 1 read-write	View most switch configuration and status information and change physical port settings.	11	11
Layer 2 read-write	View and change configuration and status information for Layer 2 (bridging and switching) functions.	12	12
Layer 3 read-write	View and change configuration and status information for Layer 2 and Layer 3 (routing) functions.	13	13
Read-write	View and change configuration and status information across the switch. Read-write access does not allow you to change security and password settings. This access level is equivalent to SNMP read- write community access.	rw	rw
Read-write-all	Permits all the rights of read-write access and the ability to change security settings. This access level allows you to change the Avaya command line interface (ACLI) and Web-based management user names and passwords and the SNMP community strings.	rwa	rwa

You can enable or disable users with particular access levels, eliminating the need to maintain large numbers of access levels and passwords for each user.

The system denies access to a user with a disabled access level who attempts to log on. The following error message appears after a user attempts to log on with a blocked access level:

CPU1  $[mm/dd/yy \ hh:mm:ss]$  0x0019bfff GlobalRouter ACLI WARNING Slot 1: Blocked unauthorized acli access

The system logs the following message to the log file:

User <user-name> tried to connect with blocked access level <access-level> from <src-ipaddress> via <login type>.

The system logs the following message for the console port:

User <user-name> tried to connect with blocked access level <access-level> from console port.

Remote Authentication Dial-in User Service (RADIUS) authentication takes precedence over the local configuration. If you enable RADIUS authentication on the switch, the user can access the switch even if you block an access level on the switch.

If you disable an access level, all running sessions, except FTP sessions, with that access level to the switch terminate.

## Important:

Only the RWA user can disable an access level on the switch. You cannot disable the RWA access level on the switch.

The system preserves these configurations across restarts.

## hsecure bootconfig flag

The switch supports a configurable flag called high secure (hsecure). Use the hsecure flag to enable the following password features:

- 10 character enforcement
- aging time
- limitation of failed login attempts
- protection mechanism to filter designated IP addresses

If you activate the **hsecure** flag, the software enforces the 10-character rule for all passwords. The password must contain a minimum of two uppercase characters, two lowercase characters, two numbers, and two special characters.

If you enable hsecure for the first time and the password file does not exist, then the device creates a normal default username (rwa) and password (rwa). In this case, the password does not meet the minimum requirements for hsecure and as a result the system prompts you to change the password.

For more information about the hsecure flag, see *Configuring Security on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-601.

#### Enhanced secure mode

If you enable enhanced secure mode, the system has new authentication levels. Enhanced secure mode allows the system to:

- Provide role-based access levels
- Stronger password requirements
- · Stronger rules on password length
- Stronger rules on password complexity
- · Stronger rules on password change intervals
- · Stronger rules on password reuse
- · Stronger password maximum age use

For more information on enhanced secure mode, see <u>System access security enhancements using</u> <u>ACLI</u> on page 180.

# Managing the system using different VRF contexts

You can use the Enterprise Device Manager (EDM) to manage the system using different Virtual Router Forwarding (VRF) contexts.

• Using the GlobalRouter (VRF 0), you can manage the entire system. GlobalRouter is the default view at log in

 Using a VRF context other than the GlobalRouter (VRF 0), you have limited functionality to manage the system. For instance you can only manage the ports assigned to the specified VRF instance

Specify the VRF instance name on the EDM screen when you launch a VRF context view. You can use the context names (SNMPv3) and community strings (SNMPv1/v2) to assign different VRFs to manage selected components, such as ports and VLANs. For more information about context names and community strings, see *Configuring Security on Avaya Virtual Services Platform* 7200 *Series and* 8000 *Series*, NN47227-601.

# **ACLI** passwords

The switch ships with default passwords set for access to ACLI through a console or Telnet session. If you possess read-write-all access authority, and you use SNMPv3, then you can change passwords in encrypted format. If you use Enterprise Device Manager (EDM), then you can also specify the number of allowed Telnet sessions and rlogin sessions.

## Important:

Be aware that the default passwords and community strings are documented and well known. Avaya strongly recommends that you change the default passwords and community strings immediately after the first logon.

For security, if you fail to log on correctly on the device in three consecutive instances, then the device locks for 60 seconds.

The switch stores passwords in encrypted format and not in the configuration file.

#### Subscriber or administrative interaction

As a network administrator, you can configure the RADIUS server for user authentication to override user access to commands. You must still provide access based on the existing access levels in the switch, but you can customize user access by allowing and denying specific commands.

You must configure the following three returnable attributes for each user:

- Access priority (single instance)-the access levels currently available on the switch (ro, I1, I2, I3, rw, rwa)
- Command access (single instance)–indicates whether the user has access to the commands on the RADIUS server
- ACLI commands (multiple instances)-the list of commands that the user can or cannot use

# Access policies for services

You can control access to the switch by creating an access policy. An access policy specifies the hosts or networks that can access the switch through various services, such as Telnet, Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), Secure Shell version 2 (SSHv2), and remote login (rlogin). You can enable or disable access services by configuring flags.

You can define network stations that can access the switch or stations that cannot access the switch. For each service you can also specify the level of access, such as read-only or read-write-all.

When you configure access policies, you can perform either of the following actions:

- Globally enable the access policy feature, and then create and enable individual policies. Each policy takes effect immediately after you enable it.
- Create and enable individual access policies, and then globally enable the access policy feature to activate all the policies at the same time.

HTTP, SSH and rlogin support IPv4 and IPv6 with no difference in configuration or functionality.

## Web interface passwords

The switch includes a Web-management interface, Enterprise Device Manager (EDM), that you can use to monitor and manage the device through a supported Web browser from anywhere on the network. For more information on supported web browsers, see *Using ACLI and EDM on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series*, NN47227-103.

A security mechanism protects EDM and requires you to log on to the device using a user name and password. The default user name is admin and the default password is password.

#### Important:

For security reasons, EDM is disabled by default. For instructions about how to enable the interface, see *Quick Start Configuration for Avaya Virtual Services Platform* 7200 Series and 8000 Series, NN47227-102.

#### Password encryption

The switch handles password encryption in the following manner:

- After the device starts, the system restores the web-server passwords and community strings from the hidden file.
- After you modify the web-server username and password or SNMP community strings, the system makes the modifications to the hidden file.

# Enhanced secure mode authentication access levels

After you enable enhanced secure mode with the boot config flags enhancedsecure-mode command, the switch supports role-based authentication levels. With enhanced secure mode enabled, the switch supports the following authentication access levels for local authentication, Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS), and Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) authentication:

- Administrator
- Privilege
- Operator

- Auditor
- Security

Each username is associated with a certain role in the product and appropriate authorization rights for viewing and executing commands are available for that role.

With enhanced secure mode enabled, the person in the role-based authentication level of administrator configures the login and password values for the other role-based authentication levels.

The administrator initially logs on to the switch using the default login of admin and the default password of admin. After the initial login, the switch prompts the administrator to create a new password.

The following displays an example of the initial login to the switch by the administrator after enhanced secure mode is enabled.

The administrator then configures default logins and passwords for the other users based on the role-based authentication levels of the user.

Access level	Description	Login location
Administrator	The administrator access level permits all read-write access, and can change security settings. The administrator access level can configure ACLI and web-based management user names, passwords, and the SNMP community strings. The administrator access level can also view audit logs.	SSH/Telnet (in band/mgmt)/ console
Privilege	The privilege access level has the same access permission as the administrator; however, the privilege access level cannot use RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication. The system must authenticate the privilege access level within the VSP switch at a console level. The privilege	console

## Access level and login details

Access level	Description	Login location
	access level is also known as emergency-admin.	
Operator	The operator access level can view most switch configurations and status information. The operator access level can change physical port settings at layer 2 and layer 3. The operator access level cannot access audit logs or security settings.	SSH/Telnet(in band/mgmt)/ console/
Auditor	The auditor access level can view configuration information, status information, and audit logs.	SSH/Telnet(in band/mgmt)/ console/
Security	The security access level can change security settings only. The security access level also has permission to view configuration and status information.	SSH/Telnet(in band/mgmt)/ console/

# **Password requirements**

After you enable enhanced secure mode on the switch the password requirements are stronger. The individual in the administrator access level role configures and provides a temporary user name and password. After you log in for the first time with the temporary user name and temporary password, the system forces you to change the temporary password. After you change the temporary password, you cannot use the password again in subsequent sessions.

The following topic discusses the enhanced password requirements.

## Password complexity rule

After you enable enhanced secure mode, the system checks each password change request to ensure the new password meets the password complexity required.

The default for the password complexity rule includes the following:

- Two uppercase character, from the range: ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
- Two lowercase character, from the range: abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
- Two numeric character, from the range: 1234567890
- Two special character, from the range: `~!@#\$%^&\*()\_-+={[]|\:;"'<,>.?/

## Password length rule

The system enforces a minimum password length of 15 characters after you enable enhanced secure mode.

If you do not meet the password length rule, the system displays the following message:

Password change aborted. The new password does not meet the minimum complexity requirement. Please select another password that meets the

change interval, length, complexity, no consecutive repeating characters or history requirements of the domain.

#### Password change interval rule

The system enforces a minimum password change interval, which defines the minimum amount of time before you can change to a new password. By default, the minimum change interval is 24 hours between changing from one password to a new password. If you want to change your password, and attempt to do so, the system checks the timestamp for your password to determine if enough time has passed to allow you to change the password.

If you attempt to change the password and not enough time has passed, the system rejects the request, and the system informs you that the password was recently changed. Any password change outside of the enforced interval requires the Administrator to approve the change.

If you try to change the password before the change interval allows, the system displays the following message:

Password change aborted. The new password does not meet the minimum complexity requirement. Please select another password that meets the change interval, length, complexity, no consecutive repeating characters or history requirements of the domain.

#### **Password reuse rule**

After you enable enhanced secure mode, the administrator access level can define the number of old passwords that cannot be reused. The password reuse rule ensures that recently used passwords are not reused immediately, which reduces the risk of someone unlawfully gaining access to the system. The default number of prohibited recently used passwords is 3, but you can define up to 99.

The system saves the password history and stores the history in an encrypted format, along with the user name, and date of change. If a particular user attempts to change a password, the system looks up the password history list, and checks it against the stored passwords the user has previously used. If the password is on the list of previously used passwords, the system rejects the password change, and displays the following message:

Old password not allowed.

#### Password maximum age rule

The system enforces automatic password renewal and password lockout after the expiration period because long-term usage of the same password can cause the system to be vulnerable to hacking.

You can configure the password expiration period to a range of 1 to 365 days. The default password expiration period is 90 days.

#### **Password max-session**

The password max-sessions value indicates the maximum number of times a particular type of rolebased user can log in to the switch through the SSH session at the same time. The max-sessions value applies only for SSH sessions, and only with enhanced secure mode enabled.

After the maximum session number is reached that particular type of user cannot login. For example, if the max-sessions for an auditor user is configured as 5, then the auditor user can log in to only five SSH sessions at the same time. The default is 3.

## Password pre-notification interval and post-notification interval rule

After enhanced secure mode is enabled, the switch enforces password expiry. To ensure a user does not lose access, the switch offers pre- and post-notification messages explaining when the password will expire.

The administrator can define pre- and post-notification intervals to between one to 99 days.

The system maintains the password with a time stamp for when the password expiration. When you log in, the system checks the password time stamp and the notification timer values. If the administrator configures the pre-notification to 30 days, when you log in, the system checks the time stamp and notification timer values, and if the password expiry is due in 30 days, the system displays the first notification.

The pre-notification intervals provide messages to warn users that their passwords will expire within a particular timeframe:

- interval 1—By default, interval 1 is 30 days.
- interval 2—By default, interval 2 is 7 days.
- interval 3—By default, interval 3 is 1 day.

The post-notification intervals provide notification to users that their passwords have expired within a particular timeframe:

- interval 1—By default, interval 1 is 1 day.
- interval 2—By default, interval 2 is 7 days.
- interval 3—By default, interval 3 is 30 days.

If you do not change the password before the expiry date, the system locks your account. Once locked, only the administrator can unlock the account. The administrator creates a temporary password, and then you can login with the temporary password.

# System access configuration using ACLI

The section provides procedures to manage system access through configurations such as usernames, passwords, and access policies.

# **Enabling ACLI access levels**

Enable ACLI access levels to control the configuration actions of various users.

## About this task

#### Important:

Only the RWA user can disable an access level on the switch. You cannot disable the RWA access level on the switch.

The system preserves these configurations across restarts.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable an access level:

password access-level WORD<2-8>

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Block ACLI access to Layer 1 to control the configuration actions of various users:

Switch:1(config) # no password access-level 11

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the password access-level command.

#### Table 44: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
WORD<2-8>	Permits or blocks this access level. The available access level values are as follows:
	• I1 — Specifies Layer 1.
	<ul> <li>I2 — Specifies Layer 2.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>I3 — Specifies Layer 3.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>ro — Specifies read-only.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rw — Specifies read-write.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>rwa — Specifies read-write-all.</li> </ul>
	To set this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command. By default, the system permits all access levels. To block an access level, use the no operator with the command.

## **Changing passwords**

Configure new passwords for each access level, or change the logon or password for the different access levels of the switch. After you receive the switch, use default passwords to initially access ACLI. If you use Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3), you can change encrypted passwords.

## Before you begin

• You must use an account with read-write-all privileges to change passwords. For security, the switch saves passwords to a hidden file.

## About this task

If you enable the hsecure flag, after the aging time expires, the system prompts you to change your password. If you do not configure the aging time, the default is 90 days.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
configure terminal
```

2. Change a password:

```
cli password WORD<1-20> {layer1|layer2|layer3|read-only|read-write|
read-write-all}
```

- 3. Enter the old password.
- 4. Enter the new password.
- 5. Enter the new password a second time.
- 6. Configure password options:

```
password [access-level WORD<2-8>] [aging-time <1-365>] [default-
lockout-time <60-65000>] [lockout WORD<0-46> time <60-65000>] [min-
passwd-len <10-20>] [password-history <3-32>]
```

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

#### Change a password:

Switch:1(config)#cli password smith read-write-all

#### Enter the old password:

Switch:1(config)#Enter the old password : winter

#### Enter the new password:

Switch:1(config) # Enter the New password : summer

#### Enter the new password a second time:

Switch:1(config) # Re-enter the New password : summer

Set password to an access level of read-write-all and the expiration period for the password to 60 days:

Switch:1(config) # password access-level rwa aging-time 60

# Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the cli password command.

#### Table 45: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
layer1 layer2 layer3 read-only read-write read-write- all	Changes the password for the specific access level.
WORD<1-20>	Specifies the user logon name.

Use the data in the following table to use the <code>password</code> command.

#### Table 46: Variable definitions

Value
Permits or blocks this access level. The available access level values are as follows:
• 11
• 12
• 13
• ro
• rw
• rwa
Configures the expiration period for passwords in days, from 1–365. The default is 90 days.
Changes the default lockout time after three invalid attempts. Configures the lockout time, in seconds, and is in the 60–65000 range. The default is 60 seconds.
To configure this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.
Configures the host lockout time.
• WORD<0–46> is the host IP address in the format a.b.c.d.
<ul> <li>&lt;60-65000&gt; is the lockout-out time, in seconds, in the 60–65000 range. The default is 60 seconds.</li> </ul>
Configures the minimum length for passwords in high-secure mode. The default is 10 characters.
To configure this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.

Variable	Value
password-history <3-32>	Specifies the number of previous passwords the switch stores. You cannot reuse a password that is stored in the password history. The default is 3.
	To configure this option to the default value, use the default operator with the command.

# Configuring an access policy

## About this task

Configure an access policy to control access to the switch.

You can permit network stations to access the switch or forbid network stations to access the switch.

For each service, you can also specify the level of access; for example, read-only or read-write-all.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
```

configure terminal

2. Create an access policy by assigning it a number:

access-policy <1-65535>

3. Restrict the access to a specific level:

```
access-policy <1-65535> access-strict
```

4. Configure access for an access policy:

access-policy <1-65535> accesslevel <ro|rwa|rw>

5. Configure the access policy mode, network, and precedence:

```
access-policy <1-65535> [mode <allow|deny>] [precedence <1-128>]
[network <A.B.C.D> <A.B.C.D>]
```

If you configure the access policy mode to deny, the system checks the mode and service, and if they match the system denies the connection. With the access policy mode configured to deny, the system does not check accesslevel and access-strict information. If you configure the access policy mode to allow, the system continues to check the accesslevel and access-strict information.

6. Configure optional access protocols for an access policy:

```
access-policy <1-65535> [ftp] [http] [ssh] [telnet] [tftp]
```

7. Configure optional trusted username access for an access policy:

#### System access

access-policy <1-65535> host WORD<0-46> [username WORD<0-30>]

8. Configure optional SNMP parameters for an access policy:

```
access-policy <1-65535> [snmp-group WORD<1-32> <snmpv1|snmpv2c|usm>]
OR
```

access-policy <1-65535> [snmpv3]

9. Enable the access policy:

access-policy <1-65535> enable

10. Enable access policies globally:

access-policy

#### Example

Assuming no access policies exist, start with policy 3 and name the policy policy3:

Switch:1(config)# access-policy 3 name policy3

Add read-write-all access level to policy 3:

Switch:1(config)# access-policy 3 accesslevel rwa

Add the usm group group\_example to policy 3:

Switch:1# access-policy 3 snmp-group group\_example usm

Enable access strict:

Switch:1config)# access-policy 3 access-strict

Enable policy 3:

Switch:1(config)# access-policy 3 enable

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **access-policy** command.

Variable	Value
access-strict	Restrains access to criteria specified in the access policy.
	<ul> <li>true—The system accepts only the currently configured access level.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>false—The system accepts access up to the configured level.</li> </ul>
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
accesslevel <ro rwa rw></ro rwa rw>	Specifies the level of access if you configure the policy to allow access.
enable	Enables the access policy.

Variable	Value
ftp	Activates or disables FTP for the specified policy. Because FTP derives its login and password from the ACLI management filters, FTP works for read- write-all (rwa) and read-write (rw) access, but not for the read-only (ro) access. Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
host WORD<0-46>	For remote login access, specifies the trusted host address as an IP address.
	The switch supports access-policies over IPv4 and IPv6 with no difference to functionality or configuration.
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
http	Activates the HTTP for this access policy. Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
mode <allow deny></allow deny>	Specifies whether the designated network address is allowed access to the system through the specified access service. The default is allow.
	If you configure the access policy mode to deny, the system checks the mode and service, and if they match the system denies the connection. With the access policy mode configured to deny, the system does not check accesslevel and access- strict information. If you configure the access policy mode to allow, the system continues to check the accesslevel and access-strict information.
network <a.b.c.d> <a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d>	Specifies the IP address and subnet mask for IPv4 or the IP address and prefix for IPv6 that can access the system through the specified access service.
	The switch supports access-policies over IPv4 and IPv6 with no difference to functionality or configuration.
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
precedence <1-128>	Specifies a precedence value for a policy, expressed as a number from 1–128. The precedence value determines which policy the system uses if multiple policies apply. Lower numbers take higher precedence. The default value is 10.
snmp-group WORD<1-32> <snmpv1 snmpv2c usm></snmpv1 snmpv2c usm>	Adds an SNMP version 3 group under the access policy.
	<i>WORD&lt;1–32&gt;</i> is the SNMP version 3 group name consisting of 1–32 characters.
	Table continues

Variable	Value
	<snmpv1 snmpv2c usm> is the security model; either snmpv1, snmpv2c, or usm.</snmpv1 snmpv2c usm>
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
snmpv3	Activates SNMP version 3 for the access policy.
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
ssh	Activates SSH for the access policy.
	Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
telnet	Activates Telnet for the access policy. Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
tftp	Activates the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) for this access policy. Use the no operator to remove this configuration.
username WORD<0-30>	Specifies the trusted host user name for remote login access.

# Specifying a name for an access policy

## About this task

Assign a name to an existing access policy to uniquely identify the policy.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Assign a name to the access policy:

access-policy <1-65535> name WORD<0-15>

## Example

Switch:1>enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Assign a name to an access policy:

Switch:1(config) # access-policy 10 name useraccounts

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the access-policy command.

#### Table 47: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
	Specifies a name expressed as a string from 0–15 characters.

# Allowing a network access to the switch

## About this task

Specify the network to which you want to allow access.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

#### 2. Specify the network:

```
access-policy <1-65535> [mode <allow|deny>] [network <A.B.C.D>
<A.B.C.D>]
```

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1# configure terminal

Specify the network to which you want to allow access:

```
Switch:1(config)#access-policy 5 mode allow network 192.192.192.0 24
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the access-policy command.

#### Table 48: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
mode <allow deny></allow deny>	Specifies whether a designated network address is allowed or denied access through the specified access service. The default is allow.
network <a.b.c.d> <a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d></a.b.c.d>	The IPv4 address and subnet mask, or the IPv6 address and prefix-length permitted, or denied, access through the specified access service.

# Configuring access policies by MAC address

## About this task

Configure access-policies by MAC address to allow or deny local MAC addresses on the network management port after an access policy is activated. If the source MAC does not match a configured entry, the default action is taken. A log message is generated to record the denial of access. For connections coming in from a different subnet, the source mac of the last hop is used in decision making. Configure access-policies by MAC address does not perform MAC or Forwarding Database (FDB) filtering on data ports.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

2. Add the MAC address and configure the action for the policy:

```
access-policy by-mac <0x00:0x00:0x00:0x00:0x00:0x00> <allow/deny>
```

3. Specify the action for a MAC address that does not match the policy:

access-policy by-mac action <allow/deny>

#### Example

Switch:1> enable

Switch:1 configure terminal

Add the MAC address:

```
Switch:1(config)#access-policy by-mac 00-C0-D0-86-BB-E7 allow
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the access-policy by-mac command.

Table 49: Variable definitions

Variable	Value
<0x00:0x00:0x00:0x00: 0x00:0x00>	Adds a MAC address to the policy. Enter the MAC address in hexadecimal format.
<allow deny></allow deny>	Specifies the action to take for the MAC address.

# System access security enhancements using ACLI

The section provides information on security enhancements after you enable enhanced secure mode.

# Displaying the boot config flags status

Use the following procedure to display boot config flag status. If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the status displays as true. If enhanced secure mode is disabled, the status displays as false.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable configure terminal

2. View the boot flag status:

show boot config flags

#### Example

Display if enhanced secure mode is enabled. In the example, enhanced secure mode displays as true, which means enhanced secure mode is enabled:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#show boot config flags
flags block-snmp false
flags debug-config false
flags debugmode false
flags enhancedsecure-mode true
flags factorydefaults false
flags ftpd true
flags hsecure false
flags ipv6-mode false
flags logging true
flags reboot true
flags rlogind false
flags spanning-tree-mode mstp
flags spbm-config-mode true
flags sshd true
flags telnetd true
flags tftpd true
flags trace-logging false
flags verify-config true
```

# Enabling enhanced secure mode

Use the following procedure to enable enhanced secure mode. Enhanced secure mode is disabled by default.

#### About this task

## 😵 Note:

When you migrate your switch from enhanced secure mode enabled to disabled, or from disabled to enabled, you must build a new configuration. Do not use a configuration created in either enhanced secure mode disabled or enabled, and expect it to transfer over to the new mode.

Avaya cannot guarantee the configuration file, if you transfer between enhanced secure mode enabled to disabled, or from enhanced secure mode disabled to enabled.

After you enable enhanced secure mode, the system can provide role-based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.

After you disable enhanced secure mode, the authentication, access-level, and password requirements work similarly to any of the existing commercial releases.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Enable enhanced secure mode:

boot config flags enhancedsecure-mode

3. (Optional) Disable enhanced secure mode:

no boot config flags enhancedsecure-mode

4. Save the configuration:

save config

😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

5. Restart the switch:

```
boot [config WORD<1-99>][-y]
```

#### 😵 Note:

If you enter the boot command with no arguments, you cause the switch to start using the current boot choices defined by the boot config choice command.

If you enter a boot command and the configuration filename without the directory, the device uses the configuration file from /intflash/.

#### Example

Enable enhanced secure mode:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#boot config flags enhancedsecure-mode
Switch:1(config)#save config
Switch:1(config)#exit
Switch:1(config)#boot config /intflash/config.cfg -y
```

# Creating accounts for different access levels

Use the following procedure to create accounts for different access levels in enhanced secure mode. You must be the administrator to configure the different access levels.

## Before you begin

• You must enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
configure terminal
```

2. Create accounts on the VSP switch for different access levels:

```
password create-user {auditor|operator|privilege|security} WORD<1-
255>
```

3. Save the configuration:

save config

😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Create an account at the auditor level for jsmith:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password create-user auditor jsmith
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

## Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **password** create-user command.

Variable	Value
{auditor operator privilege security}	Specifies the access level for the user.
WORD<1-255>	Specifies the user name.

## Deleting accounts in enhanced secure mode

Use the following procedure to delete accounts in enhanced secure mode.

#### Before you begin

- You must enable enhanced secure mode.
- You must be an admin or privilege user to delete accounts.

## Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Delete an account on the VSP switch:

password delete-user username WORD<1-255>

3. Save the configuration:

save config

Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Delete an account for jsmith:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password delete-user user-name jsmith
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **password delete-user** command.

Variable	Value
user-name WORD<1–255>	Specifies the user name.

## Configuring a password for a specific user

Configure a new password for a user if the password has expired or locked. Only the administrator can configure a password for a user.

#### Before you begin

• You must enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
configure terminal
```

2. Create accounts on the VSP switch for different access levels:

password set-password user-name WORD<1-255>

3. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Configure a password for jsmith:

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the password set-password command.

Variable	Value
user-name WORD<1-255>	Specifies the user for which to configure the password.

# Returning the system to the factory defaults

Return the system to factory defaults. Reset the switch to the default passwords and configuration. If you use this command, the system returns to factory defaults, returns necessary flags to their default values, and deletes all of the configured user accounts in enhanced secure mode.

You can only access this command after you enable enhanced secure mode. Only the individual with the administrator access role can use this command. After the administrator uses this command, the administrator must reboot the switch.

#### 😵 Note:

The command sys sys-default does not save the config file. When you execute the command sys sys-default, you must reboot the system to have the command take effect. After the system reboots, you must login and then save the config file. Otherwise, if you reboot the DUT again for a second time without saving the config file, the changes are not saved and the system comes back up in enhanced secure mode.

#### Before you begin

- You must enable enhanced secure mode.
- Save the configuration to a file to retain the configuration settings.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Return the system to the factory defaults:

sys system-default

3. Restart the switch:

reset

4. Save the configuration:

save config

#### Example

Return the system to the factory defaults:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#sys system-default
```

```
WARNING: Executing this command returns the system to factory defaults and deletes all local configured user accounts. This command needs system reset to take into effect Do you want to continue (y/n)? y
```

Switch:1#reset

The device reboots and the Admin user logs into the system again.

Switch:1(config)#save config

## Configuring the password complexity rule

#### About this task

Use the following procedure to configure the password complexity rule.

The password complexity rule default is to use at least two uppercase, two lowercase, two numeric, and two special character to meet the password criteria.

#### Before you begin

· You must enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the password complexity rule:

password password-rule <1-2> <1-2> <1-2> <1-2>

3. (Optional) Configure the password complexity rule to the default:

default password password-rule

4. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Configure the password complexity rule to require two uppercase, two lowercase, two numeric and two special characters in each password:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password password-rule 2 2 2 2
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the password password-rule command.

Variable	Value
<1-2> <1-2> <1-2> <1-2>	Configures the minimum password rule. The first variable defines the number of uppercase characters required. The second <1-2> variable defines the number of lowercase characters required. The third <1-2> variable defines the number of numeric characters required. The fourth <1-2> variable defines the number of special characters required. The default for each of these is 2.

## Configuring the password length rule

#### About this task

Configure the password length rule after you enable enhanced secure mode. By default, the minimum password length is 15.

#### Before you begin

• Enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the password length rule option:

password min-passwd-len <8-32>

3. (Optional) Configure the password length rule to the default:

```
default password min-passwd-len
```

4. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Configure the password length rule to 20:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password min-passwd-len 20
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the password min-passwd-len command.

Variable	Value
<8–32>	Configures the minimum character length required.
	The default is 15.

## Configuring the change interval rule

#### About this task

Use the following procedure to configure the change interval rule. The system enforces a minimum password change interval, which defines the minimum amount of time before you can change to a new password. By default, the minimum change interval is 24 hours between changing from one password to a new password.

#### Before you begin

• Enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the change interval rule option:

password change-interval <1-999 hours>

3. (Optional) Configures the change interval rule to the default:

default password change-interval

4. Save the configuration:

save config

## 😵 Note:

The **save config** command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in **boot config**. Use the command **show boot config choice** to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Configure the change interval rule to 72 hours:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password change-interval 72
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the password change-interval command.

Variable	Value
<1–999>	Configures the minimum interval between consecutive password changes. The default is 24 hours.

## Configuring the reuse rule

Use the following procedure to configure the password reuse rule. The default password reuse rule is 3.

#### Before you begin

• Enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the password reuse rule option:

```
password password-history <3-32>
```

3. (Optional) Configure the password reuse rule to the default:

default password password-history

4. Save the configuration:

```
save config
```

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

## Example

Configure the reuse rule to 88:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password password-history 30
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **password password-history** command.

Variable	Value
<3–32>	Configures the minimum number of previous passwords to remember. The default is 3.

## Configuring the maximum number of sessions

Use the following procedure to configure the maximum number of sessions on the switch. The maxsessions value configures the number of times a particular role-based user can log in to the switch through the SSH session at the same time. The default max-sessions value is 3.

The max-sessions value applies only for SSH sessions, and only with enhanced secure mode enabled.

#### Before you begin

• Enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the maximum number of sessions:

password max-sessions <1-8> user-name WORD<1-255>

3. (Optional) Configure the password reuse rule to the default:

default password max-sessions

4. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😒 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

## Example

#### Configure the reuse rule to 5:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password max-sessions 5 user-name jsmith
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **password** max-sessions command.

Variable	Value
<1–8>	Specifies the maximum number of sessions. The default is 3.
user-name WORD<1-255>	Specifies the user-name.

## Configuring the maximum age rule

Use the following procedure to configure the maximum age rule.

If enhanced secure mode is enabled, the individual with the administrator access level role can configure the aging-time for each user. If you configure the aging time for each user, the aging time must be more than the global change interval value. The default is 90 days.

If you do not enable enhanced secure mode, the aging time is a global value for all users.

#### Before you begin

• You must enable enhanced secure mode.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

```
enable
```

configure terminal

2. Configure the maximum age rule option:

password aging-time day <1-365> [user WORD<1-255>]

3. (Optional) Configure the maximum age rule to the default:

default password aging-time [user WORD<1-255>]

4. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

## Example

Configure the maximum age rule option to 100 days for user jsmith:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#password aging-time day 100 user jsmith
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the **password** aging-time command.

Variable	Value
day <1–365>	Configures the password aging time in days. The default is 90 days.
user WORD<1-255>	Specifies a particular user.

## Configuring the pre- and post-notification rule

Use the following procedure to configure the pre-notification and post-notification rule.

After enhanced secure mode is enabled, the switch enforces password expiry. To ensure a user does not lose access, the switch offers pre- and post-notification messages explaining when the password will expire.

The administrator can define pre- and post-notification intervals to between one to 99 days.

#### Before you begin

• You must enable enhanced secure mode.

#### About this task

The pre-notification intervals provide messages to warn users that their passwords will expire within a particular timeframe:

- interval 1—By default, interval 1 is 30 days.
- interval 2—By default, interval 2 is 7 days.
- interval 3—By default, interval 3 is 1 day.

The post-notification intervals provide notification to users that their passwords have expired within a particular timeframe:

- interval 1—By default, interval 1 is 1 day.
- interval 2—By default, interval 2 is 7 days.
- interval 3—By default, interval 3 is 30 days.

#### Procedure

1. Enter Global Configuration mode:

enable

configure terminal

2. Configure the pre-notification rule option:

password pre-expiry-notification-interval <1-99> <1-99> <1-99>

3. Configure post-notification rule option:

password post-expiry-notification-interval <1-99> <1-99> <1-99>

4. Configure the pre-notification rule to the default:

default password pre-expiry-notification-interval

5. Configure the post-notification rule to the default:

default password post-expiry-notification-interval

6. Save the configuration:

save config

#### 😵 Note:

The save config command saves the configuration file with the filename configured as the primary configuration filename in boot config. Use the command show boot config choice to view the current primary and backup configuration filenames.

#### Example

Configure the pre- and post-notification rules to the default:

```
Switch:1>enable
Switch:1#configure terminal
Switch:1(config)#default password pre-expiry-notification-interval
Switch:1(config)#default password post-expiry-notification-interval
Switch:1(config)#save config
```

#### Variable definitions

Use the data in the following table to use the pre-expiry-notification-interval command.

Variable	Value
<1–99> <1–99> <1–99>	Configure the pre-notification intervals to provide messages to warn the users that their passwords will expire within a particular timeframe.
	The first <1–99> variable specifies the first notification, the second <1–99> specifies the second notification, and the third <1–99> variable specifies the third interval.
	By default, the first interval is 30 days, the second interval is 7 days, and the third interval is 1 day.

Use the data in the following table to use the **post-expiry-notification-interval** command.

Variable	Value
<1–99> <1–99> <1–99>	Configure the post-notification intervals to provide notification to the users that their passwords have expired within a particular timeframe.

Variable	Value
	The first <1–99> variable specifies the first notification, the second <1–99> specifies the second notification, and the third <1–99> variable specifies the third interval.
	By default, the first interval is 1 day, the second interval is 7 days, and the third interval is 30 days.

# System access configuration using EDM

The section provides procedures you can use to manage system access by using Enterprise Device Manager (EDM). Procedures include configurations for usernames, passwords, and access policies.

# **Enabling access levels**

#### About this task

Enable access levels to control the configuration actions of various users.

## Important:

Only the RWA user can disable an access level on the switch. You cannot disable the RWA access level on the switch.

The system preserves these configurations across restarts.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Security > Control Path**.
- 2. Click General.
- 3. Click the CLI tab.
- 4. Select the enable check box for the required access level.
- 5. Click Apply.

## **CLI field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the CLI tab.

Name	Description
RWAUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-write-all CLI account.
RWAPassword	Specifies the password for the read-write-all CLI account.
RWEnable	Activates the read-write access. The default is enabled.

Table continues...

Name	Description
RWUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-write CLI account.
RWPassword	Specifies the password for the read-write CLI account.
RWL3Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 3 access. The default is enabled.
RWL3UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 3 read-write CLI account.
RWL3Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 3 read-write CLI account.
RWL2Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 2 access. The default is enabled.
RWL2UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 2 read-write CLI account.
RWL2Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 2 read-write CLI account.
RWL1Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 1 access. The default is enabled.
RWL1UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 1 read-write CLI account.
RWL1Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 1 read-write CLI account.
ROEnable	Activates the read-only CLI account. The default is enabled.
ROUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-only CLI account.
ROPassword	Specifies the password for the read-only CLI account.
MaxTelnetSessions	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions in a range from 0–8. The default is 8.
MaxRloginSessions	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent Rlogin sessions in a range from 0–8. The default is 8.
Timeout	Specifies the number of seconds of inactivity for a Telnet or Rlogin session before the system initiates automatic timeout and disconnect, expressed in a range from 30–65535. The default is 900 seconds.
NumAccessViolations	Indicates the number of CLI access violations detected by the system. This variable is a read-only field.

# Changing passwords

## About this task

Configure new passwords for each access level, or change the logon or password for the different access levels of the system to prevent unauthorized access. After you receive the switch, use default passwords to initially access ACLI. If you use Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3), you can change passwords in encrypted format.

## Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Security > Control Path**.
- 2. Click General.
- 3. Click the CLI tab.
- 4. Specify the username and password for the appropriate access level.

5. Click Apply.

# **CLI field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the CLI tab.

Name	Description
RWAUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-write-all CLI account.
RWAPassword	Specifies the password for the read-write-all CLI account.
RWEnable	Activates the read-write access. The default is enabled.
RWUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-write CLI account.
RWPassword	Specifies the password for the read-write CLI account.
RWL3Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 3 access. The default is enabled.
RWL3UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 3 read-write CLI account.
RWL3Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 3 read-write CLI account.
RWL2Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 2 access. The default is enabled.
RWL2UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 2 read-write CLI account.
RWL2Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 2 read-write CLI account.
RWL1Enable	Activates the read-write Layer 1 access. The default is enabled.
RWL1UserName	Specifies the user name for the Layer 1 read-write CLI account.
RWL1Password	Specifies the password for the Layer 1 read-write CLI account.
ROEnable	Activates the read-only CLI account. The default is enabled.
ROUserName	Specifies the user name for the read-only CLI account.
ROPassword	Specifies the password for the read-only CLI account.
MaxTelnetSessions	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions in a range from 0–8. The default is 8.
MaxRloginSessions	Specifies the maximum number of concurrent Rlogin sessions in a range from 0–8. The default is 8.
Timeout	Specifies the number of seconds of inactivity for a Telnet or Rlogin session before the system initiates automatic timeout and disconnect, expressed in a range from 30–65535. The default is 900 seconds.
NumAccessViolations	Indicates the number of CLI access violations detected by the system. This variable is a read-only field.

# Creating an access policy

#### About this task

Create an access policy to control access to the switch. An access policy specifies the hosts or networks that can access the switch through various services, such as Telnet, SNMP, HTTP, SSH, and rlogin.

You can allow network stations access the switch or forbid network stations to access the switch. For each service, you can also specify the level of access, such as read-only or read-write-all.

HTTP and HTTPS support IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

On IPv6 networks, the switch supports SSH server, remote login (rlogin) server and Remote Shell (rsh) server only. The switch does not support outbound SSH client over IPv6, rlogin client over IPv6 or rsh client over IPv6. On IPv4 networks, the switch supports both server and client for SSH, rlogin and rsh.

#### Important:

EDM does not provide SNMPv3 support for an access policy. If you modify an access policy with EDM, SNMPV3 is disabled.

#### Procedure

- 1. In the navigation tree, open the following folders: **Configuration > Security > Control Path**.
- 2. Click Access Policies.
- 3. Click the Access Policies tab.
- 4. Click Insert.
- 5. In the **ID** box, type the policy ID.
- 6. In the **Name** box, type the policy name.
- 7. Select the PolicyEnable check box.
- 8. Select the **Mode** option to allow or deny a service.

If you configure the access policy mode to **deny**, the system checks the mode and service, and if they match the system denies the connection. With the access policy mode configured to **deny**, the system does not check **AccessLevel** and **AccessStrict** information. If you configure the access policy mode to allow, the system continues to check the **AccessLevel** and **AccessStrict** information.

- 9. From the **Service** options, select a service.
- 10. In the **Precedence** box, type a precedence number for the service (lower numbers mean higher precedence).
- 11. Select the NetInetAddrType.
- 12. In the **NetInetAddress** box, type an IP address.
- 13. In the NetInetAddrPrefixLen box, type the prefix length.
- 14. In the **TrustedHostInet Address** box, type an IP address for the trusted host.
- 15. In the **TrustedHostUserName** box, type a user name for the trusted host.
- 16. Select an AccessLevel for the service.
- 17. Select the **AccessStrict** check box, if required.

# Important:

If you select the **AccessStrict** option, you specify that a user must use an access level identical to the one you select.

18. Click Insert.

# **Access Policies field descriptions**

Use the data in the following table to use the Access Policies tab.

Name	Description
ld	Specifies the policy ID.
Name	Specifies the name of the policy.
PolicyEnable	Activates the access policy. The default is enabled.
Mode	Indicates whether a packet with a source IP address matching this entry is permitted to enter the device or is denied access. The default is allow.
	If you configure the access policy mode to <b>deny</b> , the system checks the mode and service, and if they match the system denies the connection. With the access policy mode configured to <b>deny</b> , the system does not check <b>AccessLevel</b> and <b>AccessStrict</b> information. If you configure the access policy mode to allow, the system continues to check the <b>AccessLevel</b> and <b>AccessStrict</b> information.
Service	Indicates the protocol to which this entry applies. The default is no service enabled.
Precedence	Indicates the precedence of the policy expressed in a range from 1–128. The lower the number, the higher the precedence. The default is 10.
NetInetAddrType	Indicates the source network Internet address type as one of the following.
	• any
	• IPv4
	• IPv6
	IPv4 is expressed in the format a.b.c.d. Express IPv6 in the format x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x.
NetInetAddress	Indicates the source network Inet address (prefix/network). If the address type is IPv4, you must enter an IPv4 address and its mask length.You do not need to provide this information if you select the NetInetAddrType of any. If the type is IPv6, you must enter an IPv6 address. You do not need to provide this information if you select the NetInetAddrType of any.
NetInetAddrPrefixLen	Indicates the source network Inet address prefix-length/mask. If the type is IPv4, you must enter an IPv4 address and mask

Table continues...

Name	Description
	length. If the type is IPv6, you must enter an IPv6 address and prefix length. You do not need to provide this information if you select the NetInetAddrType of any.
TrustedHostInetAddr	Indicates the trusted Inet address of a host performing a remote login to the device. You do not need to provide this information if you select the NetInetAddrType of any. TrustedHostInetAddr applies only to rlogin and rsh.
	Important:
	You cannot use wildcard entries in the TrustedHostInetAddr field.
	If the type is IPv4, you must enter an IPv4 address and mask length. If the type is IPv6, you must enter an IPv6 address and prefix length.
TrustedHostUserName	Specifies the user name assigned to the trusted host. The trusted host name applies only to rlogin and rsh. Ensure that the trusted host user name is the same as your network logon user name; do not use the switch user name, for example, rwa.
	Important:
	You cannot use wildcard entries. The user must already be logged in with the user name to be assigned to the trusted host. For example, using "rlogin -I newusername xx.xx.xx.xx" does not work from a UNIX workstation.
AccessLevel	Specifies the access level of the trusted host as one of the following:
	• readOnly
	• readWrite
	• readWriteAll
	The default is readOnly.
Usage	Counts the number of times this access policy applies.
AccessStrict	Activates or disables strict access criteria for remote users.
	If selected, a user must use an access level identical to the one you selected in the dialog box to use this service.
	<ul> <li>selected: remote login users can use only the currently configured access level</li> </ul>
	cleared: remote users can use all access levels
	Important:
	If you do not select true or false, user access is governed by criteria specified in the policy table. For example, a user

Table continues...

Name	Description	
	with an rw access level specified for a policy ID in the policy table is allowed rw access, and ro is denied access.	
	The default is false.	

# Enabling an access policy

#### About this task

Enable the access policy feature globally to control access across the switch.

You can create an access policy to control access to the switch. An access policy specifies the hosts or networks that can access the switch through access services; for example Telnet, SNMP, Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), and remote login (rlogin).

#### Procedure

- 1. In the Device Physical View tab, select the Device.
- 2. In the navigation tree, expand the following folders: Configuration > Edit.
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the System Flags tab.
- 5. Select the **EnableAccessPolicy** check box.
- 6. Click Apply.
- 7. Click Close.

# System access security enhancements using EDM

The section provides information to enable enhanced secure mode.

## Enabling enhanced secure mode

Use the following procedure to enable enhanced secure mode. Enhanced secure mode is disabled by default.

#### About this task

After you enable enhanced secure mode, the system can provide role-based access levels, stronger password requirements, and stronger rules on password length, password complexity, password change intervals, password reuse, and password maximum age use.

After you disable enhanced secure mode, the authentication, access-level, and password requirements work similarly to any of the existing commercial releases.

# Note:

You can use EDM to enable or disable enhanced secure mode. To configure the security enhancements this feature provides, you must use ACLI.

#### Procedure

- 1. On the Device Physical View, select the device.
- 2. In the navigation pane, open the following folders: Configuration > Edit
- 3. Click Chassis.
- 4. Click the **Boot Config** tab.
- 5. Select the EnableEnhancedsecureMode check box.
- 6. Click Apply.
- 7. Save the configuration, and restart the switch.

# **Chapter 14: ACLI show command reference**

This reference information provides show commands to view the operational status of the switch.

# Access, logon names, and passwords

Use the **show cli password** command to display the access, logon name, and password combinations. The syntax for this command is as follows.

#### show cli password

The following example shows output from the show cli password command.

```
Switch:1#show cli password
      access-level
      aging
              90
      min-passwd-len 10
      password-history 3
      ACCESS LOGIN
                              STATE
      rwa
               rwa
                              NA
              rw
      rw
                              ena
      13
              13
                             ena
      12
              12
                              ena
      11
               11
                              ena
      ro
               ro
                              ena
      Default Lockout Time
                              60
      Lockout-Time:
                                   Time
```

The following example shows output from the **show cli password** command if enhanced secure mode is enabled.

#### 😵 Note:

After you enable enhanced secure mode, the parameters in the output for the **show cli password** command apply to all of the role-based users, except for the admin user. So for instance, the system mandates that the admin user must have a password length of 15, and a password with two of each of the following characters: uppercase, lowercase, numeric and special character. However, the admin user can then configure this differently for the other user access levels. The following values that display for min-passwd-len and password-rule are those configured by admin, and they apply to the privilege, operator, security, and auditor access levels.

```
Switch:1#show cli password
change-interval 24
```

```
min-passwd-len 8
password-history 3
password-rule 1 1 1 1
pre-expiry-notification-interval 1 7 30
post-expiry-notification-interval 1 7 30
access-level
ACCESS LOGIN AGING MAX-SSH-SESSIONS STATE
admin rwa 90 3 ena
                            90
privilege
                                       3
                                                            dis
operator oper1 90 3
security security 90 3
auditor auditor 90 3
Default Lockout Time 60
                                      3
                                                            ena
                                                            ena
                                                            ena
Lockout-Time:
```

# **Basic switch configuration**

Use the **show basic config** command to display the basic switch configuration. The syntax for this command is as follows.

#### show basic config

The following example shows the output of this command.

```
Switch:1#show basic config
setdate : N/A
auto-recover-delay : 30
```

# **Current switch configuration**

Use the **show running-config** command to display the current switch configuration. The syntax for this command is as follows.

```
show running-config [verbose] [module <boot|cfm|cli|cluster|diag|filter|
ip|isis|lacp|mlt|naap|nsna|ntp|port|qos|radius|rmon|slpp|spbm|stg|sys|
vlan|web>]
```

The following table explains parameters for this command.

#### Table 50: Command parameters

Parameter	Description
module	Specifies the command group for which you request
<boot cfm cli diag filter ip isis lacp mlt naap nsna ntp  port qos radius rmon slpp spbm stg sys vlan web&gt;</boot cfm cli diag filter ip isis lacp mlt naap nsna ntp  	configuration settings.
verbose	Specifies a complete list of all configuration information about the switch.

If you make a change to the switch, it appears under the specific configuration heading. The following example shows a subset of the output of this command.

```
Switch:1#show running-config
Preparing to Display Configuration...
#
# Sun Jan 04 14:04:23 1970 UTC
# box type : VSP-8284XSQ
# software version : vsp8k_4.0_B017 (PRIVATE)
# cli mode : ACLI #
--More-- (q = quit)
```

## 😵 Note:

The output from the **show running-config** command displays an "end statement" near the end of the config file. This statement means that the script is exiting the Global Configuration mode and loading the rest of the configuration in Privileged EXEC mode, which is a requirement when loading the IP redistribution commands.

If you add **verbose** to the **show running-config** command, the output contains current switch configuration including software (versions), performance, VLANs (numbers, port members), ports (type, status), routes, memory, interface, and log and trace files. With the verbose command, you can view the current configuration and default values.

# **CLI** settings

Use the **show cli info** command to display information about the ACLI configuration. The syntax for this command is as follows.

#### show cli info

The following example shows sample output from the **show** cli info command.

```
Switch:1#show cli info

cli configuration

ore : true

screen-lines : 23

telnet-sessions : 8

rlogin-sessions : 8

timeout : 900 seconds

monitor duration: 300 seconds

monitor interval: 5 seconds

use default login prompt : true

default login prompt : Login:

custom login prompt : Login:

use default password prompt : true

default password prompt : Password:

custom password prompt : Password:

prompt : Switch
```

# **Ftp-access sessions**

Use the **show ftp-access** command to display the total sessions allowed. The syntax for this command is as follows.

#### show ftp-access

The following example shows output from the **show** ftp-access command.

```
Switch:1#show ftp-access
max ipv4 sessions : 4
```

# Hardware information

Use the **show sys-info** command to display system status and technical information about the switch hardware components. The command displays several pages of information, including general information about the system (such as location), chassis (type, serial number, and base MAC address), temperature, power supplies, fans, cards, system errors, port locks, topology status, and message control information. The syntax fo this command is as follows.

show sys-info [card] [fan] [led] [power] [temperature]

The following table explains parameters for this command.

#### Table 51: Command parameters

Parameter	Description
card	Specifies information about the device. Includes type, serial number and assembly date.
fan	Specifies information about installed cooling ports.
led	Displays LED information in detail.
power	Specifies information about installed power supplies.
temperature	Displays temperature information.

The following example shows partial output from the **show sys-info** command for VSP 8284XSQ. The output for this command can be different for other VOSS switches because of hardware differences.

```
Switch:1>show sys-info
General Info :
    SysDescr : VSP-8284XSQ (4.2.1.0) (DEV)
    SysName : Switch
    SysUpTime : 0 day(s), 15:49:09
    SysContact : http://support.avaya.com/
    SysLocation : 211 Mt. Airy Road,Basking Ridge,NJ 07920
Chassis Info:
    Chassis : 8284XS0
```

#### ACLI show command reference

Serial# : SDNIV84Q2002 H/W Revision : 1 H/W Config : NumSlots : 2 NumPorts : 85 BaseMacAddr : b0:ad:aa:41:34:00 MacAddrCapacity : 1024 MgmtMacAddr : b0:ad:aa:41:34:81 System MTU : 1950 Card Info : Serial# Part# Oper Admin Power Slot# CardType Status Status State 8242XSQ SDNIV84Q2002 1 \_\_\_ up up on 2 8242XSQ SDNIV84Q2002 -- up up on Temperature Info : CPU Temperature MAC Temperature PHY1 Temperature PHY2 Temperature 31 35 27 30 Power Supply Info : Ps#1 Status : up Ps#1 Type : AC Ps#1 Description : DPS-800RB D Ps#1 Serial Number: GWXD1415000060 Ps#1 Version : S1F Ps#1 Part Number : 700508298 Ps#2 Status : empty Total Power Available : 800 watts Fan Info : Fan#1 Status: upFan#1 Type: regularSpeedFan#1 FlowType: front-back Fan#1 FlowType Fan#2 Status: upFan#2 Type: regularSpeedFan#2 FlowType: front-back Fan#2 FlowType : front-back LED Info : LED#1 Label : PWR LED#1 Status : GreenSteady LED#2 Label : Status LED#2 Status : GreenSteady

```
LED#3 Label : Rps
LED#3 Status : Off
LED#4 Label : Fan
LED#4 Status : GreenSteady
System Error Info :
Send Login Success Trap : false
Send Authentication Trap : false
Error Code : 0
Error Severity : 0
Port Lock Info :
Status : off
LockedPorts :
Message Control Info :
Action : suppress-msg
Control-Interval : 30
Max-msg-num : 5
Status : enable
Configuration Operation Info :
Last Change: 0 day(s), 10:37:22
Last Vlan Change: 0 day(s), 06:42:58
Last Statistic Reset: 0 day(s), 00:00:00
```

Use **show interface gigabtethernet** command to display the port information of the switch. The syntax to this command is as follows:

show interface gigabitethernet {slot/port[/sub-port][-slot/port[/subport]][,...]}

Following example shows output form show interfaces gigabitethernet 1/41 - 1/42 command:

Switch:1#show interfaces gigabitEthernet 1/41-1/42										
						Por	===== t			
Inter	Interface									
PORT						L	INK	PORT		
PHYSI	CAL			STATUS						
NUM	IN	JDEX	DESCR	RIPTION	TRAP	LO	CK	MTU	ADDRESS	
ADMIN		OPERATI	2							
1/41	232	40GbNo	one	true	false	1950	b0:a	ad:aa:41	:34:28 down	down
1/42	233	40GbNo	one	true	false	1950	b0:a	ad:aa:41	:34:29 down	down

# **NTP server statistics**

Use the **show ntp statistics** command to view the following information:

- number of NTP requests sent to this NTP server
- number of times this NTP server updated the time
- number of times the client rejected this NTP server while attempting to update the time
- stratum
- version
- sync status
- reachability
- · root delay
- precision

The syntax for this command is as follows.

#### show ntp statistics

The following example shows sample command output.

```
Switch:1##show ntp statistics

N NTP Server : 192.0.2.187

Stratum : unknown

Version : unknown

Sync Status : unknown

Reachability : unknown

Root Delay : unknown

Precision : unknown

Access Attempts : 0

Server Synch : 0

Server Fail : 0

Fail Reason : unknown
```

# **Power summary**

Use the **show** sys **power** command to view a summary of the power information for the chassis.

The syntax for this command is as follows.

```
show sys power [global] [power-supply] [slot]
```

The following example shows sample command output.

VSP-8284XSQ:1#show sys power

```
Chassis Power Information
Chassis Power Information
Chassis Power Status: non-redundant
```

Chassis Type	Total Chassis Power	Required Redundant Power		Available Power
8284XSQ	800	0	145	655

# Power information for power supplies

Use the **show** sys **power power**-supply command to view detailed power information for each power supply.

The syntax for this command is as follows.

show sys power power-supply

The following example shows sample command output.

VSP-8284XSQ:1#show sys power power-supply

			Power Supply	Information		
Power Supply		Input Voltage	Serial Num	Part Num	Oper Status	
PS#2	AC	110/220	GWXD1349000116-	DPS-800RB	up	800

# **System information**

Use the **show sys** command to display system status and technical information about the switch hardware components and software configuration. The command shows several pages of information, including general information about the system (such as location), chassis (type, serial number, and base MAC address), temperature, power supplies, fans, cards, system errors, port locks, topology status, and message control information. The syntax for this command is as follows.

show sys <dns|force-msg|mgid-usage|msg-control|mtu|power|setting|
software|stats|topology-ip>

The following table explains parameters for this command.

#### Table 52: Command parameters

Parameter	Description
dns	Shows the DNS default domain name.
force-msg	Shows the message control force message pattern settings.

Table continues...

Parameter	Description		
mgid-usage	Shows the multicast group ID (MGID) usage for VLANs and multicast traffic.		
msg-control	Shows the system message control function status (activated or disabled).		
mtu	Shows system maximum transmission unit (MTU) information.		
power	<ul> <li>Shows power information for the chassis. Command options are</li> <li>power-supply—power information for each power supply</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>slot—power information for each slot</li> </ul>		
setting	Shows system settings.		
software	Shows the version of software running on the switch, the last update of that software, and the Boot Config Table. The Boot Config Table lists the current system settings and flags.		
stats	Shows system statistics. For more information about statistics, see <i>Monitoring Performance on Avaya Virtual Services Platform 7200 Series and 8000 Series</i> , NN47227-701.		
topology-ip	Shows the circuitless IP set.		

The following example shows output from the **show** sys **dns** command.

The following example shows output from the show sys mgid-usage command.

```
Switch:1#show sys mgid-usag
Number of MGIDs used for VLANs : (6)
Number of MGIDs used for multicast : (0)
Number of MGIDs used for SPBM : (0)
Number of MGIDs remaining for VLANs : (4089)
Number of MGIDs remaining for multicast : (6976)
Number of MGIDs remaining for SPBM : (1024)
```

The following example shows output from the **show** sys **msg-control** command.

```
Switch:1#show sys msg-control
```

```
Message Control Info :
action : suppress-msg
control-interval : 5
```

max-msg-num : 5 status : disable

The following example shows output from the show sys setting command.

The following example shows output from the **show** sys **software** command.

Switch:1#show sys software

```
System Software Info :
Default Runtime Config File : /intflash/rich.cfg
Config File :
Last Runtime Config Save : Thu Mar 20 05:50:13 2014
Boot Config Table
Version : Build vsp6k 4.0.0.0 GA (PRIVATE) on Sat Mar 15 13:06:52 EDT 2014
PrimaryConfigSource : /intflash/rich.cfg
SecondaryConfigSource : /intflash/config.cfg
EnableFactoryDefaults : false
EnableDebugMode : false
EnableHwWatchDogTimer : false
EnableRebootOnError : true
EnableTelnetServer : true
EnableRloginServer : false
EnableFtpServer : true
EnableTftpServer : false
```

# System status (detailed)

Use the **show tech** command to display technical information about system status and information about the hardware, software, and operation of the switch.

The information available from the **show tech** command includes general information about the system (such as location), hardware (chassis, power supplies, fans, and ports), system errors, boot configuration, software versions, memory, port information (locking status, configurations, names, interface status), VLANs and STGs (numbers, port members), Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), and log and trace files. This command displays more information than the similar **show sys-info** command. The syntax for this command is as follows.

show tech

The following example shows representative output from the **show** tech command.

# **Telnet-access sessions**

Use the **show telnet-access** command to display to show the total sessions allowed. The syntax for this command is as follows.

```
show telnet-access
```

The following example shows output from the **show** telnet-access command.

```
Switch:1#show telnet-access
max ipv4 sessions : 8
```

# Users logged on

Use the **show users** command to display a list of users currently logged on to the system. The syntax for this command is as follows.

show users

The following example shows output from the **show users** command.

```
Switch:1#show users
SESSION USER ACCESS IP ADDRESS
```

Telnet0	rwa	rwa	192.0.2.24	(current)
Console		none		

# Port egress COS queue statistics

Use the show qos cosq-stats interface <PT\_PORT> to retrieve the port egress COS queue statistics. The syntax for this command is as follows:

show qos cosq-stats interface <PT PORT>

The following example shows output from the show qos cosq-stats interface <PT\_PORT> command.

	Port:1/42 QOS CoS Queue Stats			
CoS	Out Packets	Out Bytes	Drop Packets	Drop Bytes
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0
3	0	0	0	0
4	0	0	0	0
5	0	0	0	0
6	0	0	0	0
7	0	0	0	0

# **CPU** queue statistics

Use the show qos cosq-stats cpu-port to display the statistics of the forwarded packets and bytes, and the dropped packets and bytes for the traffic sent toward CP. The queue assignment is based on the protocol types, not on the internal COS value. These statistics are useful for debugging purposes.

The syntax for this command is as follows:

show qos cosq-stats cpu-port

The following example shows output from the show gos cosq-stats cpu-port command.

Switch:1#show qos cosq-stats cpu-port

		QOS CoS Queue Cpu B	Port Stats Table	
CoS	Out Packets	Out Bytes	Drop Packets	Drop Bytes
0	0	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	0
2	0	0	0	0

#### ACLI show command reference

3 4	0 0	0 0	0 0	0 0
5	0	0	0	0
6	414	35714	0	0
7	0	0	0	0
8	561	41738	0	0
9	28740	1969460	0	0
10	12005	2006662	0	0
11	0	0	0	0
12	0	0	0	0
13	0	0	0	0
14	7280	495040	0	0
15	0	0	0	0

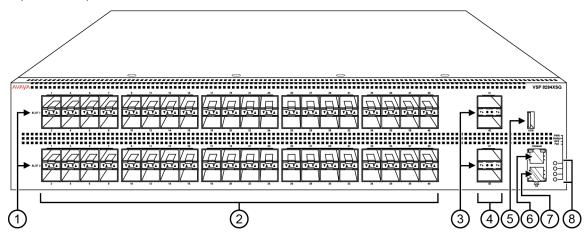
# Chapter 15: Port numbering and MAC address assignment reference

This section provides information about the port numbering and Media Access Control (MAC) address assignment used on the switch.

# Port numbering

A port number includes the slot location of the port in the chassis, as well as the port position. The following diagrams illustrate the components on the front panels of the switches. For more information on hardware, see *Installing the Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8000 Series*, NN47227-300.

The following figure illustrates the front view of the VSP 8200 switch. There are 40 ports in Slot 1 on top, and 40 ports in Slot 2 on the bottom.



#### Figure 8: VSP 8284XSQ front view

1. SFP+ port LEDs are in between the ports on each slot. The up arrows refer to the port above and the down arrows refer to the port below.

2. 80 SFP+ ports that support Avaya's 1G SFPs and 10G SFP+s.

- 40 ports in Slot 1 on top
- 40 ports in Slot 2 on the bottom

Table continues...

3. QSFP+ port LEDs are in between the ports on each slot. The up arrows refer to the port above and the down arrows refer to the port below.

4. Four QSFP+ ports: two in Slot 1 and two in Slot 2.

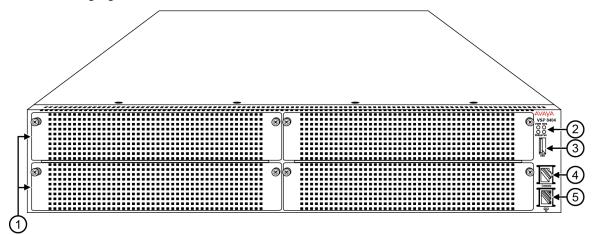
5. USB port

6. Console port (10101)

7. Management port — The LEDs are on the bottom of the port.

8. LEDs for system power (PWR), switch status (Status), redundant power supply (RPS), and fan trays (Fan).

The following figure illustrates the front view of the VSP 8400 switch.



#### Figure 9: VSP 8404 front view

Looking at the front of the switch, slot numbering begins at the top row and increases from left to right. Slot 1 is the top-left slot; slot 2 is the top-right slot. Slot 3 is the bottom-left slot; slot 4 is the bottom-right slot.

Port numbering depends on the type of Ethernet Switch Module (ESM) installed in the slot. For more information about ESMs, see *Installing the Avaya Virtual Services Platform 8000 Series*, NN47227-300.

1. Displays the four slots to install ESMs.

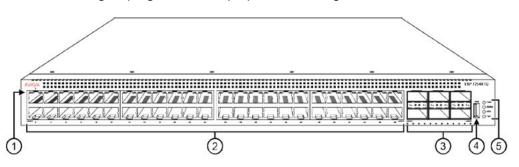
The following ESMs can be installed on these slots:

- 1/10G SFP+
- 100M/1G/10G RJ45
- 40G QSFP+
- 1/10G SFP+ and 40G QSFP+ combination
- 2. LEDs for system power (PWR), switch status (Status), redundant power supply (RPS), and fan trays (Fan).
- 3. USB port
- 4. Console port
- 5. OOB management port

The following figure illustrates the front view of the VSP 7200 switch.

When looking at the front of the switch:

- Slot 1 is the grouping of 48 ports.
- Slot 2 is the grouping of 6 40 Gbps ports to the right.



1. LEDs indicating port activity are above the RJ-45 and SFP+ port. The up arrow on the left indicates the top port; the down arrow on the right indicates the bottom port.

2. 48 ports — The VSP 7254XSQ has 48 SFP/SFP+ fiber ports. The VSP 7254XTQ has 48 RJ-45 copper ports.

3. Six QSFP+ ports — The LEDs are below each port. There are four LEDs per port to support channelization. The up arrows refer to the port above.

4. USB port

5. LEDs for system power (PWR), switch status (Status), redundant power supply (RPS), and fan trays (Fan).

## Interface indexes

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) uses interface indexes to identify ports, Virtual Local Area Networks (VLAN), and Multilink Trunking (MLT).

#### Port interface index

To determine the interface index (IfIndex), you can calculate it, or use the CLI command given below.

As a result of the channelization support for 40–gigabit ports, the ifIndex of each 40–gigabit port increases by 4. The number is reserved for the 3 sub-ports when channelization is enabled.

If the first port is not a 40–gigabit port, the ifIndex of this port is (64 x slot number) +128 + (port number -1).

If the first port is a 40–gigabit port, the ifIndex of the first port is  $(64 \times 10^{-1} \text{ slot} - 1) + 128$ , and IfIndex of the next port is  $(64 \times 10^{-1} \text{ slot} - 1) + 128 + ((port number - 1) + 128)$ .

The slot numbers are 1-2 for the VSP 7200 Series.

The slot numbers are 1-2 for the VSP 8200.

The slot numbers are 1-4 for VSP 8400.

To determine the port interface index through the ACLI, use the following command:

show interfaces gigabitEthernet

#### The following example shows an output for this command:

Switch:1(config)#show interfaces gigabitEthernet

				Port In	terface	:		
PORT NUM	INDEX	DESCRIPTION	LINK TRAP	PORT LOCK	MTU	PHYSICAL ADDRESS	STA ADMIN	TUS OPERATE
1/1	192	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:00	up	down
1/2	193	10GbOther	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:01	up	down
1/3	194	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:02	up	down
1/4	195	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:03	up	down
1/5	196	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:04	up	down
1/6	197	10GbSR	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:05	up	down
1/7	198	10GbSR	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:06	up	down
1/8	199	GbicSx	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:07	up	down
1/9	200	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:08	up	down
1/10	201	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:09	up	down
1/11	202	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0a	up	down
1/12	203	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0b	up	down
1/13	204	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0c	up	down
1/14	205	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0d	up	down
1/15	206	10GbNone	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0e	up	down
1/16	207	GbicSx	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:0f	up	down
1/17	208	40GbCR4	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:10	up	down
1/18/1	212	40GbSR4-Channel	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:14	up	up
1/18/2	213	40GbSR4-Channel	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:15	up	up
1/18/3	214	40GbSR4-Channel	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:16	up	up
1/18/4	215	40GbSR4-Channel	true	false	1950	b0:ad:aa:41:90:17	up	up

#### **VLAN** interface index

The interface index of a VLAN is computed using the following formula:

ifIndex = 2048 + VLAN multicast group ID (MGID)

Because the default VLAN always uses an MGID value of 1, its interface index is always 2049.

#### **MLT** interface index

The interface index of a multilink trunk (MLT) is computed using the following formula:

ifIndex = 6143 + MLT ID number

## MAC address assignment

You must understand MAC addresses assignment if you perform one of the following actions:

- Define static Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) entries for IP addresses in the switch
- · Use a network analyzer to decode network traffic

Each chassis is assigned a base of 1024 MAC addresses. The first 256 are reserved for ports and other internal purposes. Routable VLAN start at an offset of 256 and above.a

#### Virtual MAC addresses

Virtual MAC addresses are the addresses assigned to VLANs. The system assigns a virtual MAC address to a VLAN when it creates the VLAN. The MAC address for a VLAN IP address is the virtual MAC address assigned to the VLAN.

# Chapter 16: Supported standards, RFCs, and MIBs

This chapter details the standards, request for comments (RFC), and Management Information Bases (MIB) that the switch supports.

## **Supported IEEE standards**

The following table details the IEEE standards that the switch supports.

Table 53: Supported IEEE standards
------------------------------------

IEEE standard	Description
802.1ag	Connectivity Fault Management
802.1ah	Provider Backbone Bridges (MAC-in-MAC encapsulation)
802.1aq	Shortest Path Bridging (SPB)
802.1ax	Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)
802.1d	MAC bridges (Spanning Tree)
802.1p	VLAN prioritization
802.1q	Virtual Local Area Network (VLAN) tagging
802.1s	Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
802.1t	802.1D maintenance
802.1w-2001	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP)
802.1x-2001	Extended Authentication Protocol (EAP) and EAP over LAN (EAPoL)
802.1x-2010	Extended Authentication Protocol (EAP) and EAP over LAN (EAPoL) (applies to authenticator state machine only)
802.3 CSMA/CD Ethernet ISO/IEC 8802	International Organization for Standardization (ISO) / International Eletrotechnical Commission (IEC) 8802-3

IEEE standard	Description
802.3ab	Gigabit Ethernet 1000BaseT 4 pair Category 5 (Cat5) Unshieled Twisted Pair (UTP)
802.1ae	MACsec
802.3ae	10 Gigabit Ethernet
802.3x	flow control
802.3z	Gigabit Ethernet

## **Supported RFCs**

The following table and sections list the RFCs that the switch supports.

#### Table 54: Supported request for comments

Request for comment	Description
draft-grant-tacacs-02.txt	TACACS+ Protocol
RFC 768	UDP Protocol
RFC 783	Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)
RFC 791	Internet Protocol (IP)
RFC 792	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)
RFC 793	Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
RFC 826	Address Resolution Protocol (ARP)
RFC 854	Telnet protocol
RFC 894	A standard for the Transmission of IP Datagrams over Ethernet Networks
RFC 896	Congestion control in IP/TCP internetworks
RFC 906	Bootstrap loading using TFTP
RFC 950	Internet Standard Subnetting Procedure
RFC 951	BootP
RFC 959, RFC 1350, and RFC 2428	FTP and TFTP client and server
RFC 1027	Using ARP to implement transparent subnet gateways/Nortel Subnet based VLAN
RFC 1058	RIPv1 Protocol
RFC 1112	Host Extensions for IP Multicasting (IGMPv1)
RFC 1122	Requirements for Internet Hosts
RFC 1253	OSPF
RFC 1256	ICMP Router Discovery

Request for comment	Description
RFC 1258	IPv6 Rlogin server
RFC 1305	Network Time Protocol v3 Specification, Implementation and Analysis
RFC 1340	Assigned Numbers
RFC 1519	Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR): an Address Assignment and Aggregation Strategy
RFC 1541	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
RFC 1542	Clarifications and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol
RFC 1583	OSPFv2
RFC 1587	The OSPF NSSA Option
RFC 1591	DNS Client
RFC 1723	RIP v2 — Carrying Additional Information
RFC 1812	Router requirements
RFC 1866	HyperText Markup Language version 2 (HTMLv2) protocol
RFC 1981	Path MTU discovery
RFC 2068	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
RFC 2131	Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP)
RFC 2138	RADIUS Authentication
RFC 2139	RADIUS Accounting
RFC 2178	OSPF MD5 cryptographic authentication / OSPFv2
RFC 2236	IGMPv2 Snooping
RFC 2284	PPP Extensible Authentication Protocol
RFC 2328	OSPFv2
RFC 2338	VRRP: Virtual Redundancy Router Protocol
RFC 2362	PIM-SM
RFC 2407	IP Security Domain Interpretation of Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)
RFC 2408	Internet Security Associations and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)
RFC 2453	RIPv2 Protocol
RFC 2460	IPv6 base stack
RFC 2463	Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification

Request for comment	Description
RFC 2464	Transmission of IPv6 packets over Ethernet networks
RFC 2548	Microsoft vendor specific RADIUS attributes
RFC 2616	Hypertext Transfer Protocol 1.1
RFC 2710 and RFC 3810	MLD (host-mode only)
RFC 2716	PPP EAP Transport Level Security (TLS) Authentication Protocol
RFC 2740	OSPFv3
RFC 2819	RMON
RFC 2865	RADIUS
RFC 2874	DNS Extensions for IPv6
RFC 2992	Analysis of an Equal-Cost Multi-Path Algorithm
RFC 3046	DHCP Option 82
RFC 3162	IPv6 RADIUS client
RFC 3315	IPv6 DHCP Relay
RFC 3376	IGMPv3
RFC 3411 and RFC 2418	SNMP over IPv6 networks
RFC 3513	Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Addressing Architecture
RFC 3569	An overview of Source-Specific Multicast (SSM)
RFC 3587	IPv6 Global Unicast Address Format
RFC3748	Extensible Authentication Protocol
RFC 3768 and draft-ietf-vrrp-ipv6-spec-08.txt	IPv6 capable VRRP
RFC 4213	IPv6 configured tunnel
RFC 4250–RFC 4256	SSH server and client support
RFC 4301	Security Architecture for IPv6
RFC 4302	IP Authentication Header (AH)
RFC 4303	IP Encapsulated Security Payload (ESP)
RFC 4305	Cryptographic algorithm implementation requirements for ESP and AH
RFC 4308	Cryptographic suites for Internet Protocol Security (IPsec)
RFC 4552	OSPFv3 Authentication and confidentiality for OSPFv3
RFC 4835	Cryptographic algorithm implementation for ESP and AH
RFC 4861	IPv6 Neighbor discovery

Request for comment	Description
RFC 4862	IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration
RFC 6329	IS-IS Extensions supporting Shortest Path Bridging

## **Quality of service**

 Table 55: Supported request for comments

Request for comment	Description
RFC2474 and RFC2475	DiffServ Support
RFC2597	Assured Forwarding PHB Group
RFC2598	An Expedited Forwarding PHB

## **Network management**

Table 56: Supported request for comments

Request for comment	Description
RFC1155	SMI
RFC1157	SNMP
RFC1215	Convention for defining traps for use with the SNMP
RFC1271	Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base
RFC1305	Network Time Protocol v3 Specification, Implementation and Analysis3
RFC1350	The TFTP Protocol (Revision 2)
RFC1354	IP Forwarding Table MIB
RFC1757	Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base
RFC1907	Management Information Base for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)
RFC1908	Coexistence between v1 & v2 of the Internet- standard Network Management Framework
RFC1930	Guidelines for creation, selection, and registration of an Autonomous System (AS)
RFC2428	FTP Extensions for IPv6

Request for comment	Description
RFC2541	DNS Security Operational Considerations
RFC2571	An Architecture for Describing SNMP Management Frameworks
RFC2572	Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
RFC2573	SNMP Applications
RFC2574	User-based Security Model (USM) for v3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3)
RFC2575	View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
RFC2576	Coexistence between v1, v2, & v3 of the Internet standard Network Management Framework
RFC2616	IPv6 HTTP server
RFC2819	Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base

## **MIBs**

#### Table 57: Supported request for comments

Request for comment	Description
RFC1156	MIB for network management of TCP/IP
RFC1212	Concise MIB definitions
RFC1213	TCP/IP Management Information Base
RFC1354	IP Forwarding Table MIB
RFC1398	Ethernet MIB
RFC1442	Structure of Management Information for version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)
RFC1450	Management Information Base for v2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2)
RFC1573	Interface MIB
RFC1650	Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet-like Interface Types
RFC1657	BGP-4 MIB using SMIv2
RFC2021	RMON MIB using SMIv2
RFC2096	IP Forwarding Table MIB

Request for comment	Description
RFC2452	IPv6 MIB: TCP MIB
RFC2454	IPv6 MIB: UDP MIB
RFC2466	IPv6 MIB: ICMPv6 Group
RFC2578	Structure of Management Information v2 (SMIv2)
RFC2674	Bridges with Traffic MIB
RFC2787	Definitions of Managed Objects for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
RFC2863	Interface Group MIB
RFC2925	Remote Ping, Traceroute & Lookup Operations MIB
RFC3416	v2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
RFC4022	Management Information Base for the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)
RFC4113	Management Information Base for the User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

## **Standard MIBs**

The following table details the standard MIBs that the switch supports.

#### Table 58: Supported MIBs

Standard MIB name	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers/Request for Comments (IEEE/RFC)	File name
STDMIB2— Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) (802.3ad)	802.3ad	ieee802-lag.mib
STDMIB3—Exensible Authentication Protocol Over Local Area Networks (EAPoL) (802.1x)	802.1x	ieee8021x.mib
STDMIB4—Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) Interface Type		iana_if_type.mib
STDMIB5—Structure of Management Information (SMI)	RFC1155	rfc1155.mib
STDMIB6—Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)	RFC1157	rfc1157.mib
STDMIB7—MIB for network management of Transfer Control	RFC1213	rfc1213.mib

Standard MIB name	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers/Request for Comments (IEEE/RFC)	File name
Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) based Internet MIB2		
STDMIB8—A convention for defining traps for use with SNMP	RFC1215	rfc1215.mib
STDMIB10—Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges	RFC1493	rfc1493.mib
STDMIB11—Evolution of the Interface Groups for MIB2	RFC2863	rfc2863.mib
STDMIB12—Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet- like Interface Types	RFC1643	rfc1643.mib
STDMIB15—Remote Network Monitoring (RMON)	RFC2819	rfc2819.mib
STDMIB17—Management Information Base of the Simple Network Management Protocol version 2 (SNMPv2)	RFC1907	rfc1907.mib
STDMIB21—Interfaces Group MIB using SMIv2	RFC2233	rfc2233.mib
STDMIB26a—An Architecture for Describing SNMP Management Frameworks	RFC2571	rfc2571.mib
STDMIB26b—Message Processing and Dispatching for the SNMP	RFC2572	rfc2572.mib
STDMIB26c—SNMP Applications	RFC2573	rfc2573.mib
STDMIB26d—User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the SNMP	RFC2574	rfc2574.mib
STDMIB26e—View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the SNMP	RFC2575	rfc2575.mib
STDMIB26f —Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework	RFC2576	rfc2576.mib
STDMIB29—Definitions of Managed Objects for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol	RFC2787	rfc2787.mib

Standard MIB name	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers/Request for Comments (IEEE/RFC)	File name
STDMIB31—Textual Conventions for Internet Network Addresses	RFC2851	rfc2851.mib
STDMIB32—The Interface Group MIB	RFC2863	rfc2863.mib
STDMIB33—Definitions of Managed Objects for Remote Ping, Traceroute, and Lookup Operations	RFC2925	rfc2925.mib
STDMIB35—Internet Group Management Protocol MIB	RFC2933	rfc2933.mib
STDMIB36—Protocol Independent Multicast MIB for IPv4	RFC2934	rfc2934.mib
STDMIB38—SNMPv3 These Request For Comments (RFC) make some previously named RFCs obsolete	RFC3411, RFC3412, RFC3413, RFC3414, RFC3415	rfc2571.mib, rfc2572.mib, rfc2573.mib, rfc2574.mib, rfc2575.mib
STDMIB39—Entity Sensor Management Information Base	RFC3433	
STDMIB40—The Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) Cipher Algorithm in the SNMP User- based Security Model	RFC3826	rfc3826.mib
STDMIB41—Management Information Base for the Transmission Control protocol (TCP)	RFC4022	rfc4022.mib
STDMIB43—Management Information Base for the User Datagram Protocol (UDP)	RFC4113	rfc4113.mib
STDMIB44—Entity MIB	RFC4133	rfc4133.mib
Q-BRIDGE-MIB —Management Information Base for managing Virtual Bridged LANs	RFC4363	rfc4363-q.mib

## **Proprietary MIBs**

The following table details the proprietary MIBs that the switch supports.

#### Table 59: Proprietary MIBs

Proprietary MIB name	File name
Avaya IGMP MIB	rfc_igmp.mib
Avaya IP Multicast MIB	ipmroute_rcc.mib
Avaya MIB definitions	wf_com.mib
Avaya PIM MIB	pim-rcc.mib
Avaya RSTP/MSTP proprietary MIBs	nnrst000.mib, nnmst000.mib
Avaya SLA Monitor Agent MIB	slamon.mib
Other SynOptics definitions	s5114roo.mib
Other SynOptics definitions	s5emt103.mib
Other SynOptics definitions	s5tcs112.mib
Other SynOptics definition for Combo Ports	s5ifx.mib
Other SynOptics definition for PoE	bayStackPethExt.mib
Rapid City MIB	rapid_city.mib
😵 Note:	
The MACsec tables, namely, rcMACSecCATable and rcMACSecIfConfigTable are a part of the Rapid City MIB.	
SynOptics Root MIB	synro.mib

## Glossary

Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)	A privacy protocol the U.S. government organizations use AES as the current encryption standard (FIPS-197) to protect sensitive information.
American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)	A code to represent characters in computers. ASCII uses uppercase and lowercase alphabetic letters, numeric digits, and special symbols.
application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC)	An application-specific integrated circuit developed to perform more quickly and efficiently than a generic processor.
bit error rate (BER)	The ratio of the number of bit errors to the total number of bits transmitted in a specific time interval.
Circuitless IP (CLIP)	A CLIP is often called a loopback and is a virtual interface that does not map to any physical interface.
Custom AutoNegotiation Advertisement (CANA)	An enhancement of the IEEE 802.3 autonegotiation process on the 10/100/1000 copper ports. Custom AutoNegotiation Advertisement offers improved control over the autonegotiation process. The system advertises all port capabilities that include, for tri-speed ports, 10 Mb/s, 100 Mb/s, 1000 Mb/s speeds, and duplex and half-duplex modes of operation. This advertisement results in autonegotiation between the local and remote end that settles on the highest common denominator. Custom AutoNegotiation Advertisement can advertise a user-defined subset of the capabilities that settle on a lower or particular capability.
Data Terminating Equipment (DTE)	A computer or terminal on the network that is the source or destination of signals.
denial-of-service (DoS)	Attacks that prevent a target server or victim device from performing its normal functions through flooding, irregular protocol sizes (for example, ping requests aimed at the victim server), and application buffer overflows.
Domain Name System (DNS)	A system that maps and converts domain and host names to IP addresses.

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	A standard Internet protocol that dynamically configures hosts on an Internet Protocol (IP) network for either IPv4 or IPv6. DHCP extends the Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP).
Dynamic Random Access Memory (DRAM)	A read-write random-access memory, in which the digital information is represented by charges stored on the capacitors and must be repeatedly replenished to retain the information.
File Transfer Protocol (FTP)	A protocol that governs transferring files between nodes, as documented in RFC 959. FTP is not secure and does not encrypt transferred data. Use FTP access only after you determine it is safe in your network.
forwarding database (FDB)	A database that maps a port for every MAC address. If a packet is sent to a specific MAC address, the switch refers to the forwarding database for the corresponding port number and sends the data packet through that port.
Generalized Regular Expression Parser (grep)	A Unix command used to search files for lines that match a certain regular expression (RE).
I/O module	An I/O module is a module that provides network connectivity for various media (sometimes called Layer 0) and protocol types. I/O modules are also called Ethernet modules.
Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE)	An international professional society that issues standards and is a member of the American National Standards Institute, the International Standards Institute, and the International Standards Organization.
Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP)	A collection of error conditions and control messages exchanged by IP modules in both hosts and gateways.
Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP)	IGMP is a host membership protocol used to arbitrate membership in multicast services. IP multicast routers use IGMP to learn the existence of host group members on their directly attached subnets.
Layer 1	Layer 1 is the Physical Layer of the Open System Interconnection (OSI) model. Layer 1 interacts with the MAC sublayer of Layer 2, and performs character encoding, transmission, reception, and character decoding.
Layer 2	Layer 2 is the Data Link Layer of the OSI model. Examples of Layer 2 protocols are Ethernet and Frame Relay.
Layer 3	Layer 3 is the Network Layer of the OSI model. An example of a Layer 3 protocol is Internet Protocol (IP).
Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP)	A network handshaking protocol that provides a means to aggregate multiple links between appropriately configured devices.

Local Area Network (LAN)	A data communications system that lies within a limited spatial area, uses a specific user group and topology, and can connect to a public switched telecommunications network (but is not one).
management information base (MIB)	The MIB defines system operations and parameters used for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
mask	A bit string that the device uses along with an IP address to indicate the number of leading bits in the address that correspond with the network part.
maximum transmission unit (MTU)	The largest number of bytes in a packet—the maximum transmission unit of the port.
media	A substance that transmits data between ports; usually fiber optic cables or category 5 unshielded twisted pair (UTP) copper wires.
Media Access Control (MAC)	Arbitrates access to and from a shared medium.
Message Digest 5 (MD5)	A one-way hash function that creates a message digest for digital signatures.
multicast group ID (MGID)	The multicast group ID (MGID) is a hardware mechanism the switch uses to send data to several ports simultaneously. Instead of sending the data to a specific port number, the switch directs the data to an MGID. The switch maintains a table that maps MGIDs to their member ports. Both virtual LAN (VLAN) and IP multicast (IPMC) use MGIDs.
MultiLink Trunking (MLT)	A method of link aggregation that uses multiple Ethernet trunks aggregated to provide a single logical trunk. A multilink trunk provides the combined bandwidth of multiple links and the physical layer protection against the failure of a single link.
multimode fiber (MMF)	A fiber with a core diameter larger than the wavelength of light transmitted that you can use to propagate many modes of light. Commonly used with LED sources for low speed and short distance lengths. Typical core sizes (measured in microns) are 50/125, 62.5/125 and 100/140.
nanometer (nm)	One billionth of a meter (10 <sup>-9</sup> meter). A unit of measure commonly used to express the wavelengths of light.
Network Time Protocol (NTP)	A protocol that works with TCP that assures accurate local time keeping with reference to radio and atomic clocks located on the Internet. NTP synchronizes distributed clocks within milliseconds over long time periods.

NonVolatile Random Access Memory (NVRAM)	Random Access Memory that retains its contents after electrical power turns off.
out of band (OOB)	Network dedicated for management access to chassis.
Packet Capture Tool (PCAP)	A data packet capture tool that captures ingress and egress (on Ethernet modules only) packets on selected ports. You can analyze captured packets for troubleshooting purposes.
port	A physical interface that transmits and receives data.
Protocol Data Units (PDUs)	A unit of data that is specified in a protocol of a specific layer and that consists of protocol-control information of the specific layer and possibly user data of that layer.
Protocol Independent Multicast, Sparse Mode (PIM-SM)	PIM-SM is a multicast routing protocol for IP networks. PIM-SM provides multicast routing for multicast groups that can span wide-area and inter- domain networks, where receivers are not densely populated. PIM-SM sends multicast traffic only to those routers that belong to a specific multicast group and that choose to receive the traffic. PIM-SM adds a Rendezvous Point router to avoid multicast-data flooding. Use PIM-SM when receivers for multicast data are sparsely distributed throughout the network.
quality of service (QoS)	QoS features reserve resources in a congested network, allowing you to configure a higher priority for certain devices. For example, you can configure a higher priority for IP deskphones, which need a fixed bit rate and split the remaining bandwidth between data connections if calls in the network are more important than the file transfers.
Read Write All (RWA)	An access class that lets users access all menu items and editable fields.
remote login (rlogin)	An application that provides a terminal interface between hosts (usually UNIX) that use the TCP/IP network protocol. Unlike Telnet, rlogin assumes the remote host is, or behaves like, a UNIX host.
remote monitoring (RMON)	A remote monitoring standard for Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)-based management information bases (MIB). The Internetwork Engineering Task Force (IETF) proposed the RMON standard to provide guidelines for remote monitoring of individual LAN segments.
Routing Information Protocol (RIP)	A distance vector protocol in the IP suite, used by IP network-layer protocol, that enables routers in the same AS to exchange routing information by means of periodic updates. You often use RIP as a very simple interior gateway protocol (IGP) within small networks.
Secure Copy (SCP)	Secure Copy securely transfers files between the switch and a remote station.

Secure Shell (SSH)	SSH uses encryption to provide security for remote logons and data transfer over the Internet.
Simple Loop Prevention Protocol (SLPP)	Simple Hello Protocol that prevents loops in a Layer 2 network (VLAN).
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)	SNMP administratively monitors network performance through agents and management stations.
single-mode fiber (SMF)	One of the various light waves transmitted in an optical fiber. Each optical signal generates many modes, but in single-mode fiber only one mode is transmitted. Transmission occurs through a small diameter core (approximately 10 micrometers), with a cladding that is 10 times the core diameter. These fibers have a potential bandwidth of 50 to 100 gigahertz (GHz) per kilometer.
Small Form Factor Pluggable (SFP)	A hot-swappable input and output enhancement component used with Avaya products to allow gigabit Ethernet ports to link with other gigabit Ethernet ports over various media types.
SMLT aggregation switch	One of two IST peer switches that form a split link aggregation group. It connects to multiple wiring closet switches, edge switches, or customer premise equipment (CPE) devices.
spanning tree	A simple, fully-connected active topology formed from the arbitrary physical topology of connected bridged Local Area Network components by relaying frames through selected bridge ports. The protocol parameters and states that are used and exchanged to facilitate the calculation of the active topology and to control the bridge relay function.
Spanning Tree Group (STG)	A collection of ports in one spanning-tree instance.
Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP)	A protocol that governs transferring files between nodes without protection against packet loss.
trunk	A logical group of ports that behaves like a single large port.
universal asynchronous receiver-transmitter (UART)	A device that converts outgoing parallel data to serial transmission and incoming serial data to parallel for reception.
User Datagram Protocol (UDP)	In TCP/IP, a packet-level protocol built directly on the Internet Protocol layer. TCP/IP host systems use UDP for application-to-application programs.

Glossary

user-based security model (USM)	A security model that uses a defined set of user identities for authorized users on a particular Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) engine.
virtual router forwarding (VRF)	Provides traffic isolation between customers operating over the same node. Each virtual router emulates the behavior of a dedicated hardware router by providing separate routing functionality, and the network treats each VRF as a separate physical router.
Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)	A protocol used in static routing configurations, typically at the edge of the network. This protocol operates on multiple routers on an IP subnet and elects a primary gateway router. When the primary router fails, a backup router is quickly available to take its place.